

ترجمه کتاب:



4000

Essential

English

Words

با پاسخ تمرینات

منبعی عالی

برای واژگان

3

Paul Nation

BeFluent.ir





# 4000 Essential English Words 3

۴۰۰۰ کلمه ضروری  
ترجمه جلد سوم

**تعداد صفحات: 324**

(برای خرید و دانلود نسخه کامل به وبسایت ما مراجعه کنید)

[www.befluent.ir](http://www.befluent.ir)

فایل‌های صوتی تلفظ کامل کتاب را از وبسایت دانلود کنید.

این کتاب توسط گروه befluent.ir ترجمه شده است و هر گونه کپی و انتشار آن در اینترنت مجاز نبوده و پیگرد قانونی خواهد داشت.



 **BeFluent.ir**



## معرفی کتاب:

تحقیقات نشان می‌دهد که در بیشتر مکالمات روزمره تنها از درصد کمی از کلمات هر زبان به صورت مکرر استفاده می‌شود. این واقعیت بیان‌گر این است که زبان‌آموزان با یادگیری این کلمات پرتکرار قادر خواهند بود که اکثر مکالمات را متوجه شده و در گام بعدی با تکرار و تسلط در استفاده از این کلمات، مهارت مکالمه خود را به صورت چشمگیری بهبود ببخشند.

سری کتاب‌های 4000 کلمه ضروری شامل 6 جلد است که در هر جلد بیشتر از 600 کلمه پرتکرار در مکالمه گنجانده شده است. در این مجموعه کلمات با توجه به میزان کاربردی بودن و تکرار آن‌ها در مکالمات و متون انتخاب شده‌اند. بنابراین با خواندن و یادگیری این کلمات مطمئن خواهید بود کلماتی که بیش از 90 درصد مکالمات انگلیسی را پوشش می‌دهند، را فرا گرفته‌اید. و از یادگیری کلماتی که ممکن است هیچوقت مورد استفاده شما قرار نگیرند، اجتناب می‌کنید. بنابراین این کلمات دارای مشخصه‌های زیر هستند:

- (1) هم در مکالمات و هم در نوشتاری بسیار کاربردی هستند.
- (2) پرتکرارترین کلمات هم در مکالمه و هم در نوشتاری هستند.
- (3) این مجموعه تقریباً 90 درصد کلمات استفاده شده در مکالمات انگلیسی، 80 درصد کلمات متون آکادمیک و 90 درصد کلمات داستان‌ها را شامل می‌شود.



## نحوه آموزش کلمات:

جلد دوم شامل 30 درس و هر درس شامل 20 کلمه می‌باشد. تمامی کلمات، تعاریف، مثال‌ها و داستان‌ها دارای تلفظ با لهجه آمریکایی می‌باشند.

ابتدا خود کلمه و معنی فارسی آن آمده است. سپس تعریف کلمه به انگلیسی و بعد از آن یک مثال برای آن کلمه به همراه ترجمه فارسی قرار داده شده است. در انتهای هر درس یک داستان که در بر دارنده تمام کلمات آن درس است به همراه ترجمه قرار دارد. با خواندن این داستان هم معنی کلمات آن درس برای شما مرور خواهد شد و هم با نحوه استفاده و کاربرد آن کلمات در موقعیت‌های واقعی آشنا خواهید شد. همینطور هر درس شامل تمرین‌هایی برای یادگیری بهتر کلمات است. پاسخ این تمرین‌ها در انتهای کتاب آورده شده است.

برای هر کلمه یک عکس اختصاص داده شده است. این عکس‌ها مرتبط با مثال آن کلمه هستند. با دیدن این عکس‌ها شما در ذهن خود یک موقعیت مربوط به آن مثال را تصور خواهید کرد که در به خاطر سپردن آن کلمه تاثیر فوق‌العاده‌ای خواهد داشت.

همینطور حالت هر کلمه (فعل، صفت، اسم و ...) مشخص شده است. دقت کنید که ممکن است یک کلمه حالت‌های دیگری نیز داشته باشد، شما سعی کنید تمرکز خود را روی حالتی از کلمه قرار دهید که مد نظر کتاب است.



## توضیح اجزای آموزشی هر کلمه:



8 v.

1 arise

7 [ə'raɪz]

2 به وجود آمدن، رخ دادن

3 To arise is to happen.

4 Difficulties arose with his computer because it was old.

5 برای کامپیوتر او مشکلاتی به وجود آمد، چون قدیمی بود.

(1 کلمه

(2 معنی فارسی کلمه

(3 تعریف انگلیسی کلمه

(4 مثال برای آن کلمه

(5 ترجمه مثال

(6 عکسی مرتبط با کلمه و مثال

(7 فونتیک (IPA) با لهجه آمریکایی برای کلمه

(8 حالت کلمه (فعل، صفت، اسم و ...)

## توضیح حالت‌های مختلف یک کلمه

v. = verb فعل

n. = noun اسم

adj. = adjective صفت

prep. = preposition حرف اضافه

pron. = pronoun ضمیر

conj. = conjunction حرف ربط



# لیست دروس و کلمات (جلد سوم)

Unit	Target Words	Page
1	arise, benefactor, blacksmith, charitable, chimney, compensate, encounter, exceed, forge, humble, iron, ladder, modest, occupy, penny, preach, prosper, province, satisfaction, sustain	8
2	acquire, awkward, caretaker, deceive, discourage, fake, hatred, hut, inferior, lodge, neglect, newcomer, offense, overlook, repay, ridiculous, satisfactory, shepherd, venture, wheat	14
3	alley, ax, bunch, chore, decent, disgrace, elbow, grateful, irritate, kid, loose, offend, overnight, persist, pine, scar, sensation, sled, tease, valentine	20
4	bloom, compact, curl, decay, dessert, dip, distant, eclipse, fairy, grace, leisure, mankind, passion, pillow, pulse, refresh, sneeze, spice, whistle, wool	26
5	acquaint, cemetery, curse, disguise, fancy, flashlight, hood, inhabitant, nourish, pirate, publication, riddle, rot, scare, shortly, skeleton, spoil, starve, thrill, wicked	32
6	alert, broadcast, bulletin, bump, chop, closet, console, district, drawer, endure, execute, grasp, rear, senator, skull, stir, tap, tremendous, underneath, worm	38
7	abandon, ambitious, bark, bay, brilliant, chin, complaint, deaf, enthusiastic, expedition, horizon, loyal, mayor, mutual, overweight, refuge, restore, rub, senses, veterinarian	44
8	anniversary, arithmetic, ashamed, burst, carpenter, coal, couch, drip, elegant, fabric, highlands, ivory, mill, needle, polish, sew, shed, thread, trim, upwards	50
9	ail, ally, boast, bounce, bully, carbohydrate, crawl, defeat, dial, dominant, mercy, nod, opponent, quarrel, rival, sore, sting, strain, torture, wrestle	56
10	absence, aloud, bald, blanket, creep, divorce, imitate, infant, kidnap, nap, nowhere, pat, relief, reproduce, rhyme, suck, urgent, vanish, wagon, wrinkle	62
11	abnormal, bamboo, blossom, compass, dialect, dishonest, dwarf, ecosystem, fatal, impatient, leaf, manuscript, marsh, patience, perfume, pond, proverb, pursuit, recite, wilderness	68
12	anticipate, barrel, beam, casual, caution, contrary, deliberate, dissolve, explode, fasten, germ, kit, puff, rag, scatter, scent, steel, swift, toss, triumph	74
13	aboard, bitter, bullet, devil, drift, enforce, fountain, harbor, inhabit, march, millionaire, port, sheriff, startle, sweat, trigger, unify, vessel, voyage, worship	80
14	apprentice, assure, bandage, bleed, bond, chef, crown, departure, diligent, emperor, fiber, horrible, impolite, kneel, luxury, massive, panic, priority, robe, scold	86
15	affair, assembly, bless, cereal, cheerful, diameter, exploit, famine, harvest, merry, nut, pardon, pharaoh, ripe, roast, routine, scheme, slim, stove, theft	92



Unit	Target Words	BeFluent.ir	Page
16	adolescent, aptitude, compliment, hinder, journalism, jury, justice, liberty, literary, pharmacy, pill, presume, privacy, punishment, sensible, slice, sorrow, straw, swell, tidy		98
17	affection, agency, ash, confine, dismiss, erupt, fate, lava, miserable, navigate, originate, remainder, retrieve, shallow, slope, span, superstition, sympathy, vibrate, wander		104
18	armor, blaze, boom, cliff, flame, independence, invasion, knight, lightning, rebel, retreat, revolution, spear, steep, summit, thunder, troops, warrior, withdraw, yield		110
19	bench, confront, daisy, dispute, horror, incident, mist, object, orphan, plot, pregnant, rage, revenge, shame, sigh, sneak, spare, stem, supper, tender		116
20	beneath, cub, dawn, dissatisfied, ease, evident, hail, howl, leap, magnificent, necessity, outcome, pile, profound, seize, squeeze, supreme, terrific, trait, vital		122
21	accustomed, affirm, astonished, bang, clan, dim, emphasis, fable, feast, glow, hollow, instinct, joint, leak, physician, sacrifice, stiff, stroke, tragic, tune		128
22	accommodate, circus, coincide, commission, dose, dye, extent, gender, headline, informal, inquire, messenger, peer, portrait, pose, ranch, steer, stripe, tame, tempt		134
23	Aborigine, ban, cautious, confess, cottage, daytime, desperate, fade, fierce, gamble, lawn, mow, outlaw, prospect, purse, rod, seldom, shave, terrified, wizard		140
24	baggage, bulb, bundle, cattle, flee, graze, greed, herd, initiate, lane, luggage, nerve, optimist, parade, pave, phantom, portable, poster, scratch, symphony, widow		146
25	circulate, consequent, derive, drown, dynasty, fraction, frost, illusion, invade, lieutenant, marine, merit, navy, polar, ray, resign, suicide, tremble, underlying, via		152
26	alter, aside, autumn, blend, collapse, crush, curve, disgusting, drain, embrace, envy, fireworks, flour, fuse, ginger, jealous, paste, receipt, wipe, wire		158
27	acknowledge, ambassador, blonde, conquer, drag, exaggerate, heritage, insult, meanwhile, necklace, noble, precious, prejudice, rumor, sin, spectacle, stack, suspicious, tin, vase		164
28	ache, arctic, canal, chemist, chill, congress, dairy, descend, grocer, hesitate, institution, jog, merchant, poke, postpone, splash, stubborn, suburb, tide, tragedy		170
29	bomb, certificate, circumstance, coffin, cope, criticism, devastate, frown, gaze, glance, grief, groom, license, microscope, nuclear, portray, rotate, souvenir, submarine, trace		176
30	appliance, basin, broom, caterpillar, cupboard, delicate, emerge, handicap, hook, hop, laundry, pursue, reluctant, sleeve, spine, stain, strip, swear, swing, utilize		182



# Introduction

## About the Vocabulary

The 600 words in each book of this series along with the additional target words presented in the appendices included in the first three books of the series are the most useful words in English. They were found by analysis of a collection of English course books from various levels in the primary, secondary and tertiary school systems. The words included in this series were chosen because they occurred many times in different levels of these materials. Because of the way that they were chosen, these words have the following characteristics:

- 1 They are useful in both spoken and written English. No matter what English course you are studying, the words in these books will be of value to you.
- 2 Each word in these books is a high-frequency word. This means that the effort in learning the words is well repaid by the number of times learners have a chance to encounter or use them.
- 3 These books as a whole cover a large proportion of the words in any spoken or written text. They cover at least 80% of the words in newspapers and academic texts, and at least 90% of the words in novels. They also cover at least 90% of the words in conversation.

## About the Books

The activities in these books are specially designed to make use of important learning conditions. Firstly, the words are introduced using sentence definitions and an example sentence. The activities that follow in the units encourage learners to recall the meanings and forms of the words. Some activities also make the learners think about the meaning of the words in the context of a sentence—a sentence different from the sentences that occurred in the introduction of the words. Moreover, each unit ends with a story containing the target words. While reading the story, the learners have to recall the meanings of the words and suit them to the context of the story. Such activities help learners develop a better understanding of a common meaning for a given word which fits the different uses.

Illustrations for each target word are provided to help learners visualize the word as it is being used in the example sentence. These word/image associations aim to help students grasp the meaning of the word as well as recall the word later.

It should be noted that words have more than one grammatical category. However, this series focuses on the word's most common form. This is mentioned to remind learners that just because a word is labeled and utilized as a noun in this series does not mean that it can never be used in another form such as an adjective. This series has simply focused on the word in the form that it is most likely to be expressed.

## Supporting Learning with Outside Activities

A well-balanced language course provides four major opportunities for learning: learning through input, learning through output, deliberate learning, and fluency development. The highly structured activities in these books support all four types of learning opportunities. In addition, learning can further be supported through the following activities:

- 1 Have students create vocabulary cards with one word from the unit on one side of the card and the translation of the word in the student's first language on the other side. Students should use the cards for study in free moments during the day. Over several weeks, students will find that quick repeated studying for brief periods of time is more effective than studying for hours at one sitting.
- 2 Assign graded readers at students' appropriate levels. Reading such books provides both enjoyment as well as meaning-focused input which will help the words stick in students' memory.
- 3 Practice reading fluency to promote faster recall of word meaning for both sight recognition and usage. Compass Publishing's *Reading for Speed and Fluency* is a good resource for reading fluency material.
- 4 Include listening, speaking, and writing activities in classes. Reinforcement of the high-frequency vocabulary presented in this series is important across all the four language skills.

### Author Paul Nation

Paul Nation is professor of Applied Linguistics in the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies at Victoria University of Wellington, New Zealand. He has taught in Indonesia, Thailand, the United States, Finland, and Japan. His specialist interests are language teaching methodology and vocabulary learning.







v.

**arise**

[ə'raɪz]

به وجود آمدن، رخ دادن

- ❖ To arise is to happen.
- Difficulties arose with his computer because it was old.
- برای کامپیوتر او مشکلاتی به وجود آمد، چون قدیمی بود.



n.

**benefactor**

['benɪfæktə]

فرد نیکوکار، خیر، حامی مالی

- ❖ A benefactor is a person who gives money to help someone.
- The student's benefactor gave him money to spend on his studies.
- حامی مالی دانش آموز به او پول داد تا صرف تحصیلاتش کند.



n.

**blacksmith**

['blæksmɪθ]

آهنگر

- ❖ A blacksmith is a person who makes things out of metal.
- The blacksmith pounded the piece of metal until it was flat.
- آهنگر به تکه آهن ضربه زد تا صاف شد.



adj.

**charitable**

['tʃærɪtəbl]

سخاوتمند، بخشنده، خیر

- ❖ When someone is charitable, they help people who are in need.
- My sister was charitable enough to help me buy my first house.
- خواهرم آنقدر سخاوتمند بود که به من در خرید اولین خانهام کمک کرد.



n.

chimney

['tʃɪmni]

دودکش



❖ A chimney is a tall pipe used to carry smoke out of a building.

➤ The cat was on the roof sitting next to the chimney.

➤ گربه روی سقف کنار دودکش نشسته بود.

v.

compensate

['kɒmpenseɪt]

پاداش دادن، دستمزد دادن



❖ To compensate is to pay someone for the time they spent doing something.

➤ Her boss compensated her for the extra work she did last week.

➤ مدیرش به خاطر کار بیشتری که هفته گذشته کرد به او پاداش داد.

v.

encounter

[ɪn'kaʊntə]

مواجه شدن، برخورد کردن، روبرو شدن



❖ If you encounter something, you meet or come close to it.

➤ I encountered a sea turtle while I was swimming.

➤ وقتی شنا می‌کردم به لاک پشت دریایی برخورد کردم.

v.

exceed

[ɪk'si:d]

فراتر رفتن، بیشتر شدن



❖ To exceed is to be more than something.

➤ Since I exceeded my limit, I decided to get rid of my credit cards.

➤ چون از حد مجاز گذشتم، تصمیم گرفتم از دست کارت‌های اعتباری‌ام خلاص شوم.

v.

**forge**

[fɔ:dʒ]

ساختن، به وجود آوردن



- ❖ To forge is to make or produce, especially with difficulty.
- Stacy and Heather forged their friendship when they were teenagers.
- استیسی و هدر رابطه دوستی خود را وقتی که نوجوان بودند ساختند.

adj.

**humble**

['hʌmbəl]

متواضع، فروتن، خاضع



- ❖ People who are humble do not believe that they are better than other people.
- Even though Bob is the smartest boy in his class, he is humble.
- با اینکه باب باهوش‌ترین پسر کلاس است، اما متواضع است.

n.

**iron**

['aɪən]

آهن



- ❖ iron is a strong metal that is used to make many objects.
- The horse had shoes made of iron.
- اسب نعل‌هایی داشت که از آهن ساخته شده بودند.

n.

**ladder**

['lædə]

نردبان، پلکان



- ❖ A ladder is an object that is used to climb up and down things.
- He used a ladder to climb to the top of his tree house.
- او از نردبان استفاده کرد تا به بالای خانه درختی‌اش برود.



adj.

modest

['mɒdɪst]

فروتن، متواضع، افتاده



❖ If people are modest, they do not think that they are too important.

➤ Derek is very modest for someone who is so rich.

➤ دِرک به عنوان کسی که بسیار ثروتمند است، خیلی متواضع است.

v.

occupy

['ɒkjəpaɪ], [-kju-]

اشغال کردن، سکونت داشتن، ساکن شدن



❖ To occupy a place is to live, work, or be there.

➤ Kevin and Alice occupied the chairs and had a long discussion.

➤ کوین و آلیس صندلی‌ها را اشغال کردند و یک بحث طولانی داشتند.

n.

penny

['penɪ]

سکه پنی



❖ A penny is a coin worth one cent.

➤ U.S. President Abraham Lincoln is on the penny.

➤ تصویر رییس‌جمهور آمریکا آبراهام لینکلن بر روی سکه پنی است.

v.

preach

[pri:tʃ]

موعظه کردن، سخنرانی مذهبی کردن



❖ To preach is to talk about and promote a religious idea.

➤ Aaron often preached about living an honest life.

➤ هارون اغلب درباره داشتن زندگی صادقانه موعظه می‌کرد.

v.

**prosper**

['prɒspə]

رونق یافتن، موفق شدن



- ❖ To prosper is to be successful or make a lot of money.
- Frank's new business finally prosper after many years of hard work.
- تجارت جدید فرانک در نهایت بعد از سال‌ها کار سخت رونق گرفت.

n.

**province**

['prɒvɪn(t)s]

استان، قلمرو



- ❖ A province is a small area that is controlled by a country.
- Canada is divided into several different provinces.
- کانادا به استان‌های متفاوتی تقسیم شده است.

n.

**satisfaction**

[ˌsætɪs'fækʃ(ə)n]

رضایت، خشنودی



- ❖ satisfaction is a feeling you get when you do or receive something good.
- Brad was filled with satisfaction when he saw what was for dinner.
- برد وقتی فهمید برای شام چه غذایی دارند غرق در رضایت شد.

v.

**sustain**

[sə'steɪn]

تقویت کردن، ادامه دادن، تغذیه کردن



- ❖ To sustain something is to keep it going.
- Wind power is a clean way to sustain a city with energy.
- انرژی بادی روشی پاک برای تغذیه‌ی انرژی شهر است.

# Exercise 1

## PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to make or produce with difficulty  
a. prosper                      b. arise                      c. penny                      d. forge
- a person who works with metal  
a. iron                      b. blacksmith                      c. charitable                      d. benefactor
- to keep something going  
a. exceed                      b. sustain                      c. preach                      d. occupy
- a small area that is part of a country  
a. ladder                      b. province                      c. encounter                      d. compensate
- thinking oneself not to be too important  
a. humble                      b. satisfaction                      c. chimney                      d. modest

## PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- benefactor  
a. giver                      b. an area  
c. money                      d. too much
- compensate  
a. where smoke goes                      b. to shape metal  
c. a tool used to climb                      d. to pay someone in return
- occupy  
a. to be rich                      b. to happen  
c. to see someone you know                      d. to be in a place
- iron  
a. a baby                      b. a type of metal  
c. a good feeling                      c. a person who makes things with metal
- exceed  
a. to keep something going                      b. to not talk about yourself too much  
c. to be kind to others                      d. to go past a certain limit



## Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. Which of the following is a form of money?
  - a. A province
  - b. A penny
  - c. A blacksmith
  - d. A ladder
2. If you meet a boy on the street, you \_\_\_\_\_ him.
  - a. exceed
  - b. occupy
  - c. encounter
  - d. sustain
3. Which of the following is a good feeling?
  - a. Modest
  - b. Humble
  - c. Satisfaction
  - d. Charitable
4. Which one is part of a house?
  - a. Forge
  - b. Compensate
  - c. Arise
  - d. Chimney
5. Which word relates to the word *religion*?
  - a. Iron
  - b. Preach
  - c. Benefactor
  - d. Prosper
6. Which of the following means to happen?
  - a. Sustain
  - b. Arise
  - c. Province
  - d. Prosper
7. Which of the following do people use to reach high places?
  - a. A chimney
  - b. A blacksmith
  - c. A benefactor
  - d. A ladder
8. If you are smart with your money, then what will happen to you?
  - a. You will occupy a jail cell
  - b. You will forge a strong relationship
  - c. You will prosper
  - d. You will become humble
9. If someone gives money to others, we could say that they are \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. charitable
  - b. modest
  - c. prosper
  - d. exceed
10. Which of the following describes someone who thinks they are no better than others?
  - a. Benefactor
  - b. Satisfaction
  - c. Humble
  - d. Compensate

# The Real St. Nick

At Christmas, children wait for St. Nicholas to bring gifts down the **chimney**. But it's not just a story. St. Nicholas was a real person.

A long time ago, a man named Marcus **occupied** a house with his family. He was not **modest**. He always told everybody he was the strongest man in the **province**.

He worked hard, but he could barely **sustain** his family. He wanted to save money and **prosper**. Still, he could never earn a **penny** more than he needed.

One day, Marcus made an agreement with a **blacksmith**. The blacksmith had a lot of work to do. But he couldn't do it all by himself. Marcus wanted to help him **forge iron**. The blacksmith agreed to **compensate** him with a lot of money.

In the same town, there was a man named Nicholas. At an early age, Nicholas started **preaching**. But he also believed that he should be **humble** and **charitable**. He learned that helping people gave him even more **satisfaction** than preaching.

One day, Nicholas **encountered** Marcus. Marcus told Nicholas about his agreement with the blacksmith. "I worked hard for him," Marcus said, "but a problem **arose**. Even though I worked for him, he didn't pay me."

Nicholas wanted to help Marcus. That night, he went back to Marcus's house. He brought a bag of gold. It **exceeded** the amount that Marcus needed. Nicholas climbed up a **ladder** and dropped the bag of gold down the chimney. Marcus thanked his **benefactor**.

Soon, people found out about Nicholas's gift. He became well known and loved. Even today, people still give secret gifts to children. And we say they are from St. Nicholas.



## سن نیک واقعی

در کریسمس، بچه‌ها منتظر سن نیکولاس می‌شوند تا از دودکش پایین بیاید و برای آنها هدیه بیاورد. اما این فقط یک داستان نیست. سن نیکولاس یک انسانی واقعی بود. خیلی وقت پیش، مردی به نام مارکوس با خانواده‌اش در خانه‌ای سکونت داشت.

او فروتن نبود. همیشه به همه می‌گفت قویترین آدم در قلمرو است. سخت کار می‌کرد، ولی به سختی می‌توانست خرج خانواده‌اش را تامین کند. او می‌خواست پول پس‌انداز کند و موفق شود. اما هنوز هم، هرگز نمی‌توانست یک پنی هم بیشتر از نیاز خود در بیاورد.

یک روز، مارکوس با آهنگر به یک توافق رسید. آهنگر کار زیادی برای انجام دادن داشت. اما نمی‌توانست همه آن را به تنهایی انجام دهد. مارکوس می‌خواست به او کمک کند تا آهن درست کند.

آهنگر قبول کرد با مقدار زیادی پول دستمزد او را بدهد. در همان شهر، مردی به نام نیکولاس وجود داشت. نیکولاس از سن کم شروع به موعظه کردن کرد. اما او همچنین بر این باور بود که باید فروتن و سخاوتمند باشد.

او یاد گرفت که کمک کردن به مردم حتی احساس رضایت بیشتری نسبت به موعظه کردن به او می‌دهد. یک روز، نیکولاس با مارکوس مواجه شد. مارکوس به نیکولاس در مورد توافقی که با آهنگر گفت.

مارکوس گفت: "من برای او سخت کار کردم، ولی مشکلی به وجود آمد. با وجود اینکه من برای او کار کردم، به من پول نداد." نیکولاس می‌خواست به مارکوس کمک کند. آن شب، او به خانه مارکوس بازگشت. او یک کیسه طلا آورد. بیشتر از مقداری بود که مارکوس نیاز داشت. نیکولاس از نردبانی بالا رفت و کیسه طلا را از دودکش پایین انداخت. مارکوس از شخص خیرخواه تشکر کرد.

خیلی زود، مردم از هدیه نیکولاس مطلع شدند. او مشهور و محبوب شد. حتی امروزه هم، مردم هنوز به بچه‌ها مخفیانه کادو می‌دهند. و ما می‌گوییم آنها از طرف سن نیکولاس هستند.



**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Marcus occupied a home with Nicholas.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ Marcus told Nicholas about his problem when he encountered Nicholas.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ A problem arose for Marcus because he enjoyed preaching.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ Nicholas got a lot of satisfaction from being charitable and humble.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ Marcus was compensated by the blacksmith for helping forge iron.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ The money that Nicholas gave Marcus exceeded the amount he needed.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. Which of the following is true about the job Marcus did?
  - a. He made pennies.
  - b. He was compensated unfairly.
  - c. He preached to people.
  - d. He barely sustained his family.
2. Why didn't Nicolas tell people that he gave money away?
  - a. He prospered.
  - b. He didn't want to be modest.
  - c. He wanted to be humble.
  - d. He wasn't popular in the province.
3. What was dropped down the chimney?
  - a. A penny
  - b. A ladder
  - c. Gold
  - d. A benefactor
4. Why did Marcus want more money?
  - a. To buy more iron
  - b. To feed his family
  - c. To give it away
  - d. To become a blacksmith



v.

**acquire**

[ə'kwaiə]

به دست آوردن، صاحب شدن

- ❖ To acquire something is to gain possession of it.
- Tina acquired a strange package yesterday.

➤ تینا دیروز بسته عجیبی را بدست آورد.



adj.

**awkward**

['ɔ:kwəd]

ناجور، ناخوشایند

- ❖ If something is awkward, it is embarrassing and uncomfortable.
- After dropping his coffee cup, Robbie felt awkward.

➤ رابی بعد از ریختن فنجان قهوه‌اش احساس ناخوشایندی داشت.



n.

**caretaker**

['keə ,teikə]

پرستار، قیم

- ❖ A caretaker is a person who takes care of very young, old, or sick people.
- My grandmother's caretaker helps her get around the house.
- پرستار مادربزرگم به او کمک می‌کند تا در اطراف خانه راه برود.



v.

**deceive**

[di'si:v]

فریب دادن، گول زدن

- ❖ To deceive someone is to make them believe something that is not true.
- He tried to deceive his friends as they were playing a game.

➤ او در حین بازی سعی کرد دوستان خود را فریب دهد.







v.

**discourage**

[dis'kʌrɪdʒ]

منصرف کردن، مایوس کردن



- ❖ To discourage someone is to make them feel less excited about something.
- Mr. Perry discouraged the students from quitting school.
- آقای پری دانش‌آموزان را از ترک تحصیل منصرف کرد.

adj.

**fake**

[feɪk]

تقلبی، مصنوعی، جعلی



- ❖ If something is fake, it is made to look real in order to trick people.
- The model was wearing fake eyelashes.
- مدل مژه‌های مصنوعی گذاشته بود.

n.

**hatred**

['heɪtrɪd]

نفرت، تنفر



- ❖ hatred is a strong feeling of not liking someone or something.
- I have a hatred for the taste of medicine.
- از طعم دارو تنفر دارم.

n.

**hut**

[hʌt]

کلبه



- ❖ A hut is a house made of wood, grass, or mud that has only one or two rooms.
- We all went into the hut to sleep.
- همه ما برای خواب به کلبه رفتیم.



adj.

**inferior**

[ɪn'fɪəriə]

نا مرغوب، بد (کالا و وسایل)



- ❖ If something is inferior, it is not as good as something else.
- Cars built a hundred years ago are inferior to ones built today.
- ماشین‌های ساخت صد سال پیش نامرغوب‌تر از ماشین‌های امروزی هستند.

n.

**lodge**

[lɒdʒ]

کلبه، کابین



- ❖ A lodge is a house in the mountains, used by people who hunt or fish.
- During our ski trip, we stayed at a lodge.
- طی سفرمان برای اسکی، در یک کلبه ماندیم.

v.

**neglect**

[nɪ'glekt]

نادیده گرفتن، کوتاهی کردن، غفلت کردن



- ❖ To neglect someone or something is to not take care of it properly.
- William neglected his room, so it is a complete mess.
- ویلیام در مرتب کردن اتاقش کوتاهی کرده‌است، پس اتاقش کاملاً به‌هم‌ریخته است.

n.

**newcomer**

['nju: ,kʌmə]

تازه وارد



- ❖ A newcomer is a person who has recently arrived at a place or a group.
- The students happily welcomed the newcomer to the school.
- دانش‌آموزان با خوشحالی از تازه‌وارد مدرسه استقبال کردند.





n.

**offense**

[ə'fen(t)s]

جرم، قانون شکنی

- ❖ An offense is behavior that is wrong or breaks a law.
- Stealing a car is a very serious offense.

➤ دزدیدن ماشین یک جرم بسیار جدی است.



v.

**overlook**

[,əʊvə'lʊk]

چشم پوشی کردن، نادیده گرفتن

- ❖ To overlook something is to not notice it, or to not realize that it is important.
- Brenda overlooked the last step and had a bad fall.

➤ برندا از آخرین پله غافل شد و سخت به زمین خورد.



v.

**repay**

[ri'pei]

جبران کردن، بازپس دادن

- ❖ To repay is to pay back or to reward someone or something.
- She repaid her friend for all of his hard work with a small gift.

➤ او با یک هدیه کوچک کار سخت دوست خود را جبران کرد.



adj.

**ridiculous**

[ri'dɪkjələs]

مسخره، مضحک

- ❖ If something is ridiculous, it is silly or strange.
- Steve looked ridiculous with those huge blue sunglasses.

➤ استیو با آن عینک آفتابی بزرگ آبی مسخره به نظر می‌رسید.



adj.

**satisfactory** [ˌsætɪs'fækt(ə)rɪ]

رضایت بخش



- ❖ If something is satisfactory, it is good enough.
- Mina often received satisfactory grades since she studied so hard.
- مینا اغلب نمرات رضایت بخشی می گرفت چون سخت درس می خواند.

n.

**shepherd** ['ʃepəd]

چوپان



- ❖ A shepherd is a person who protects and cares for sheep.
- The shepherd moved the sheep to another field.
- چوپان گوسفندان را به مزرعه ی دیگری برد.

v.

**venture** ['ventʃə]

ریسک کردن، خطر کردن



- ❖ To venture is to go to a place that may be dangerous.
- Even though it was dangerous, they ventured up the mountain.
- با اینکه خطرناک بود، خطر کردند و از کوه بالا رفتند.

n.

**wheat** [(h)wi:t]

گندم



- ❖ wheat is a plant which makes grain. wheat grain is used to make bread.
- The field of golden wheat was ready to be harvested.
- مزرعه طلایی گندم برای شخم آماده بود.



## Exercise 1

### PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- a strong feeling of not liking someone or something  
a. deceive                      b. repay                      c. offense                      d. hatred
- not as good as  
a. inferior                      b. hatred                      c. satisfactory                      d. venture
- to get something  
a. overlook                      b. discourage                      c. lodge                      d. acquire
- to go to a dangerous place  
a. wheat                      b. venture                      c. newcomer                      d. caretaker
- a plant that makes grain  
a. fake                      b. wheat                      c. shepherd                      d. hut

### PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- satisfactory  
a. to pretend                      b. to care for  
c. good enough                      d. project
- newcomer  
a. not comfortable                      b. someone new to a place  
c. not as good as                      d. a glass lamp
- repay  
a. to give back                      b. to not pay attention to  
c. a house for hunting                      d. a bad thing that someone does
- fake  
a. to fail to notice                      b. not real  
c. to get                      d. to protect
- discouraged  
a. high place                      b. to dislike a lot  
c. not real                      d. less excited

## Exercise 2

### Circle two words that are related in each group.

- a. discourage                      b. lodge                      c. venture                      d. hut
- a. shepherd                      b. caretaker                      c. repay                      d. wheat
- a. offense                      b. fake                      c. hatred                      d. deceive
- a. acquire                      b. awkward                      c. newcomer                      d. ridiculous
- a. overlook                      b. inferior                      c. neglect                      d. satisfactory

**Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.**

**1. fake / newcomers**

The girl didn't like the \_\_\_\_\_, so she played a joke on them. She put \_\_\_\_\_ bugs in their drinks.

**2. acquire / lodge**

Dave hoped to \_\_\_\_\_ a new house. The \_\_\_\_\_ where he lived was too old.

**3. repay / neglected**

She was eager to \_\_\_\_\_ the boy that had helped her repair her bike. While others had simply \_\_\_\_\_ her, he was happy to help.

**4. offenses / discouraged**

Going to jail \_\_\_\_\_ the man from any \_\_\_\_\_ in the future.

**5. shepherd / venturing**

In the middle of the storm, the \_\_\_\_\_ looked for his lost sheep by \_\_\_\_\_ up the mountain.

**6. deceive / ridiculous**

My little brother tried to \_\_\_\_\_ us by dressing in Dad's clothes, but he just looked \_\_\_\_\_.

**7. wheat / hut**

The farmer built his \_\_\_\_\_ close to the \_\_\_\_\_ field so he could constantly watch it.

**8. awkward / caretaker**

After the \_\_\_\_\_ started a small fire in the kitchen, he felt very \_\_\_\_\_.

**9. overlook / inferior**

Most shoppers tend to \_\_\_\_\_ any products that they think are \_\_\_\_\_ to similar things.

**10. hatred / satisfactory**

She had a \_\_\_\_\_ for food with tomatoes, but everything else on the menu was \_\_\_\_\_.



# The Shepherd and the Wild Sheep

Once there was a **shepherd**. Every night he counted and gathered his sheep. He was sure never to **overlook** any of them. One night, he saw some wild sheep had joined his herd. He hoped to **acquire** the **newcomers**.

It snowed that night. In the morning, the shepherd couldn't take his sheep out of his **lodge**. Instead, he had to feed them inside. He gave a small amount of **wheat** to his own sheep. But he gave more of the food to the wild sheep. He thought the extra wheat would **discourage** them from leaving.

It snowed for several days. During that time, the shepherd's sheep ate very little. The wild sheep, however, ate very well.

At last, the snow melted, and they **ventured** outdoors. As soon as he opened the door of his **hut**, the wild sheep started to run away.

"Wait! This is how you **repay** me? After I treated you so kindly, why do you run away?" the shepherd asked. His voice was full of **hatred**.

The wild sheep stopped and turned toward the shepherd.

"We're leaving because you fed us better than your own sheep," one of the wild sheep replied. "You tried to **deceive** us with your **ridiculous** plan. Yesterday you treated us kindly, but tomorrow you might be different. If more wild sheep joined your herd, you would treat us as **inferior** sheep."

As the wild sheep ran away, the shepherd understood his **offense**. He knew this **awkward** situation was his own fault. He had not been a **satisfactory caretaker**. He was a **fake** friend to the wild sheep. Because of this, he had **neglected** his own herd.



## چوپان و گوسفندهای وحشی

روزی چوپانی بود. هر شب او گوسفندان خود را می‌شمرد و جمع می‌کرد. او مطمئن می‌شد که هرگز از هیچ کدام از آنها غافل نشود. یک شب، او دید که چند گوسفند وحشی به گله‌اش پیوسته بودند.

امیدوار بود که تازه واردها را به دست بیاورد. آن شب برف بارید. صبح، چوپان نتوانست گوسفندان خود را از کلبه‌اش بیرون آورد. در عوض، باید داخل به آنها غذا می‌داد. او مقدار کمی گندم به گوسفندان خودش داد.

اما بیشتر غذا را به گوسفندان وحشی داد. فکر می‌کرد گندم اضافی آنها را از رفتن دلسرد می‌کند. چندین روز برف بارید. در طول آن زمان، گوسفندان چوپان خیلی کم خوردند. ولی، گوسفندان وحشی خیلی خوب خوردند. سرانجام، برفها آب شد و آنها جرات کردند بیرون بروند.

به محض اینکه در کلبه‌اش را باز کرد، گوسفندان وحشی شروع به فرار کردند. چوپان پرسید: "صبر کنید! اینجوری پاداش محبت‌های من را می‌دهید؟ بعد از اینکه با شما آنقدر مهربان برخورد کردم، چرا دارید فرار می‌کنید؟" صدای او پر از نفرت بود.

گوسفندهای وحشی وایسادن و به سمت چوپان چرخیدن. یکی از گوسفندان وحشی جواب داد: "داریم می‌ریم چون به ما بهتر از گوسفندان خودت غذا دادی"

"تو تلاش کردی ما را با آن برنامه مسخره‌ها فریب بدهی. دیروز با ما با محبت رفتار کردی، اما فردا ممکن است فرق کنی. اگر گوسفندهای وحشی بیشتری به گله تو ملحق بشن، تو با ما مانند گوسفندهای درجه دو برخورد می‌کنی."

وقتی گوسفندهای وحشی دویدند و دور شدند، چوپان متوجه خطای خود شد. می‌دانست این وضعیت خجالت‌آور تقصیر خود او بود.

او مراقب قابل قبولی نبود. او دوستی تقلبی برای گوسفندهای وحشی بود. به همین خاطر، در مورد گله خود غفلت کرده بود.



**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_\_ The shepherd counted his sheep because he didn't want to overlook any of them.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_ The shepherd couldn't take the sheep outside because it was dark outside.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_ The shepherd gave a little wheat to the wild sheep. But he gave his own sheep more.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_ The wild sheep ran away from the shepherd after the snow melted.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_ The wild sheep thought the shepherd had neglected his own sheep.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_ The shepherd never knew what he had done wrong.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. What was the shepherd's hope for the wild sheep?
  - a. That they wouldn't be awkward
  - b. That they would feel hatred for him
  - c. That he could acquire them
  - d. That he could repay them
2. How did the shepherd hope to discourage the wild sheep from running away?
  - a. By giving them extra food
  - b. By locking them in his hut
  - c. By selling his own sheep
  - d. By being their friend
3. All of the following describe what kind of caretaker the shepherd was EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. fake
  - b. ridiculous
  - c. inferior
  - d. satisfactory
4. What was the shepherd's offense?
  - a. He never acquired the wild sheep.
  - b. He trapped the sheep in his lodge.
  - c. He hurt the wild sheep.
  - d. He did not care for his own sheep.





n.

**alley**

['æli]

کوچه



❖ An alley is a narrow road behind houses or buildings.

➤ The alley behind my house looks dirty.

➤ کوچه پشت خانه من کثیف به نظر می‌رسد.

n.

**ax**

[æks]

تبر، تیشه



❖ An ax is a tool used to cut wood.

➤ She used an ax to cut some wood for the fire.

➤ او از تبری استفاده کرد تا برای آتش مقداری چوب قطع کند.

n.

**bunch**

[bʌntʃ]

خوشه، شاخه



❖ A bunch is a group of the same things.

➤ She was hungry, so she ate the entire bunch of grapes.

➤ او گرسنه بود، پس تمام خوشه انگور را خورد.

n.

**chore**

[tʃɔ:]

کار (روزمره)



❖ A chore is a job that you have to do but don't like.

➤ It's Nikki's chore to do the dishes every Tuesday and Wednesday night.

➤ این کار هر روز نیکی است که سه‌شنبه و چهارشنبه شبها ظرفها را بشوید.

adj.

**decent**

['di:s(ə)nt]

خوب، درست، مناسب



- ❖ When something is decent, it is OK or good enough.
- Eric did a decent job painting the fence.

➤ اریک به صورت مناسبی حصار را رنگ کرد.

n.

**disgrace**

[dis'greis]

رسوایی، آبروریزی



- ❖ disgrace is a feeling of shame.
- He felt a sense of disgrace after failing his big exam.

➤ حس افتضاحی پیدا کرد وقتی در امتحان مهم خود رد شد.

n.

**elbow**

['elbəu]

آرنج



- ❖ The elbow is the middle part of a person's arm that lets you bend it.
- She pointed to her elbow to show me where she hurt herself.

➤ او به آرنج خود اشاره کرد تا به من نشان دهد کجایش را زخمی کرده است.

adj.

**grateful**

['gretf(ə)l]

سپاسگزار، خرسند، قدردان



- ❖ When you are grateful for something, you are happy that it happened.
- The girls were grateful to have a chance to spend time with their grandfather.

➤ دخترها از اینکه فرصت داشتند زمانی را با پدربزرگ خود سپری کنند خرسند بودند.



v.

**irritate**

[ɪˈrɪteɪt]

خشمگین کردن، آزرده



❖ To irritate means to annoy someone.

- She was irritated when her brother told her that he had lost her camera.  
➤ او خشمگین شد وقتی برادرش به او گفت که دوربینش را گم کرده است.

v.

**kid**

[kɪd]

شوخی کردن



❖ To kid is to make a joke to make someone believe something which is not true.

- I am not really mad. I was kidding when I said I was angry.  
➤ من واقعاً دیوانه نیستم، به شوخی گفتم که خشمگین هستم.

adj.

**loose**

[luːs]

شل، لق



❖ When something is loose, it is not held in place well.

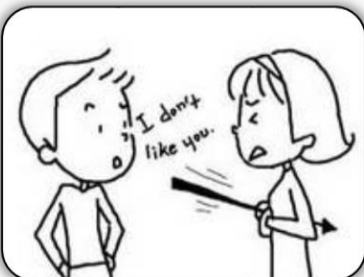
- The bolt was loose, so I tightened it with the wrench.  
➤ پیچ شل بود، پس با آچار آن را سفت کردم.

v.

**offend**

[əˈfend]

توهین کردن، ناراحت کردن، رنجاندن



❖ To offend someone means to make them angry or upset.

- They were both offended by what they had said to each other.  
➤ هر دوی آنها از به خاطر حرف‌هایی که به هم زده بودند، دلخور شدند.





adv.

**overnight**

[,əʊvə'nait]

یک شبه، شبانه، در طی شب

- ❖ When something happens overnight, it happens during the night.
- The campers stayed in the tent overnight.

➤ کسانی که به اردو رفته بودند در طول شب درون چادر ماندند.



v.

**persist**

[pə'sɪst]

ادامه داشتن، اصرار ورزیدن

- ❖ To persist means to keep doing something even when it is hard.
- Even though the lesson was difficult, he persisted until he understood.

➤ با اینکه درس سخت بود، او اصرار ورزید تا اینکه آن را یاد گرفت.



n.

**pine**

[paɪn]

کاج

- ❖ A pine is a type of tree that is tall and thin.
- There were many beautiful pine trees in the forest.

➤ درخت‌های کاج بسیار زیبایی در جنگل وجود داشتند.



n.

**scar**

[ska:]

جای زخم، جای سوختگی

- ❖ A scar is a mark on the skin after a wound heals.
- The monster had horrible scars on his cheek and forehead.

➤ هیولا جای زخم‌های وحشتناکی بر روی گونه و پیشانی‌اش داشت.

n.

**sensation**

[sen'seɪʃ(ə)n]

احساس



- ❖ A sensation is a feeling a person gets from their senses.
- Mom got a painful sensation in her head from the loud noise.
- مامان به خاطر صدای بلند دردی را در سرش احساس می‌کرد.

n.

**sled**

[sled]

سورتمه



- ❖ A sled is a small vehicle that you use on snow.
- Marvin likes to ride his sled down the hill in winter.

➤ ماروین دوست دارد در زمستان با سورتمه‌اش از تپه پایین بیاید.

v.

**tease**

[ti:z]

دست انداختن، مسخره کردن، اذیت کردن



- ❖ To tease someone means to laugh at or make fun of them.
- Jake teased Charlie because he was the new student.
- جیک، چارلی را مسخره کرد چون او دانش‌آموز جدید بود.

n.

**valentine**

['væləntaɪn]

محبوب، معشوق



- ❖ A valentine is someone you love or admire with great affection.
- Harry wanted Molly to be his valentine.

➤ هری می‌خواست مولی معشوق او باشد.

# Exercise 1

## PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- not strongly put in place  
a. kid                      b. loose                      c. disgrace                      d. sensation
- thankful  
a. decent                      b. irritate                      c. grateful                      d. offend
- a job or task  
a. sled                      b. chore                      c. alley                      d. ax
- someone you love or admire  
a. valentine                      b. pine                      c. bunch                      d. elbow
- to make angry  
a. offend                      b. scar                      c. persist                      d. overnight

## PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- bunch  
a. a group of things  
c. a narrow road  
b. a tool  
d. wood from a tree
- elbow  
a. a picture  
c. a part of the arm  
b. a mark on the skin  
d. a vehicle for snow
- irritate  
a. to keep trying  
c. not being serious  
b. to annoy  
d. full of thanks
- disgrace  
a. shame  
c. during the night  
b. to make angry  
d. not strongly attached
- decent  
a. to make fun  
c. a job or task  
b. a feeling from the senses  
d. good or correct
- overnight  
a. happening during the night  
c. not held in place  
b. to make fun of someone  
d. a feeling one gets from their senses
- ax  
a. a tall tree  
c. a part of the arm  
b. a tool used for cutting  
d. a feeling of shame
- tease  
a. a group of things  
c. when something is enough  
b. to make a joke  
d. to make fun of someone
- pine  
a. a job one has to do  
c. a mark left on the skin  
b. a tall tree  
d. a vehicle used in the snow
- sensation  
a. someone one loves or admires  
c. a feeling  
b. to make someone angry or mad  
d. a scar



## Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. ax / pine

The man bought a big \_\_\_\_\_. He needed it to cut down a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ tree in his yard.

2. offend / tease

The bully likes to \_\_\_\_\_ the smaller children. He does not know that his actions \_\_\_\_\_ them.

3. overnight / loose

The door to the shed is \_\_\_\_\_. It will be windy tomorrow, so I must work \_\_\_\_\_ to fix it so it does not blow away.

4. chore / grateful

The \_\_\_\_\_ of cutting the grass was difficult. However, the boy was \_\_\_\_\_ when he was paid for his hard work.

5. alley / sled

After the snow storm, the \_\_\_\_\_ was covered with snow and ice. It was fun to ride our \_\_\_\_\_ down the path.

6. elbow / scar

She hurt her \_\_\_\_\_ and had to go to the doctor. There is a large \_\_\_\_\_ where the cut healed.

7. persist / bunch

She must put all of the leaves into a \_\_\_\_\_. It will not be easy, but she must \_\_\_\_\_ to get the job done.

8. kids / irritate

The boy always \_\_\_\_\_ his friend about things that aren't true. But he will \_\_\_\_\_ his friend if he continues this action.

9. valentine / decent

He thought that until he got a \_\_\_\_\_ haircut, Elena would never be his \_\_\_\_\_.

10. sensation / disgrace

The runner felt \_\_\_\_\_ when he lost the race. He had a terrible \_\_\_\_\_ in his stomach.

# The Boy and his Sled

Mike was the smallest child in school. Another boy, Joe, always **teased** Mike. Joe had a large **scar** on his face from fighting other children. One day, Joe **offended** Mike when he made fun of Mike's **valentine**, Jane. Mike felt **disgrace**, but he didn't know how to make Joe stop.

That day, Mike walked home down an **alley**. He found a **bunch** of wood boards next to a **pine** tree. He thought to himself, "I could build a **decent sled** from this. If I let Joe use it, he will be nicer to me and Jane." He took the wood home.

Mike got an **ax** and cut the wood. He used nails to make sure that the pieces were not **loose**. As he worked, he bumped his **elbow** on the boards. The painful **sensation** made him want to cry. It was a hard **chore**, but he **persisted**. He worked **overnight**. By morning, the sled was finished.

Mike called Joe on the telephone. He said, "Hi Joe. Come over to my house right away."

Joe didn't know why Mike wanted him to come over. When Joe arrived, Mike told him, "Joe, it **irritated** me the other day when you said mean things about my card to Jane. You weren't **kidding** when you said those mean things. But I'm not like you. I just built this sled, and I'll let you ride it with me if you are nice."

They became friends, and Joe was **grateful** that Mike was so nice to him. He learned that it is more fun to be nice than to be mean.



## پسر و سورتماش

مایک کوچکترین بچهٔ مدرسه بود. پسر دیگری به نام جو همیشه مایک را اذیت می‌کرد. جو زخم بزرگی روی صورت خود به خاطر دعوا با دیگر بچه‌ها داشت.

یک روز، وقتی جو معشوقهٔ مایک، جین، را مسخره کرد، مایک را عصبانی کرد. مایک احساس تحقیر کرد اما نمی‌دانست چطور جلوی جو را بگیرد. آن روز، مایک از یک کوچه به طرف خانه می‌رفت. کنار یک درخت کاج، چند تختهٔ چوبی پیدا کرد.

با خود فکر کرد: "می‌تونم با اینا یک سورتمهٔ درست و حسابی بسازم. اگه بگذارم جو استفاده کنه، رفتارش با منو جین بهتر خواهد شد." او چوب‌ها را به خانه برد. مایک تبری برداشت و چوب را برید. از میخ استفاده کرد تا مطمئن شود که قطعه‌ها شل نیستند. زمانی که کار می‌کرد، آرنجش را به تخته‌ها زد.

احساس دردناک باعث شد بخوابد گریه کند. کار سختی بود اما او پافشاری به خرج داد. او شب کار کرد. صبح، کارِ سورتمه به پایان رسید. مایک به جو زنگ زد. گفت: "سلام جو، همین الان بیا خونهٔ ما." جو نمی‌دانست چرا مایک می‌خواست او به آنجا بیاید.

وقتی جو رسید، مایک به او گفت: "آزرده شدم وقتی اون روز حرف‌های بدی در مورد کارت (تبریک) من به جین زدی. شوخی هم نمی‌کردی وقتی اون حرف‌های بد رو زدی. ولی من مثل تو نیستم. همین الان این سورتمه رو درست کردم و اجازه میدم که با من آن را برانی اگر که خوب باشی."

آنها دوست شدند و جو قدردان مایک بود که رفتار خوبی با او داشت. او یاد گرفت که خوب بودن باحال‌تر از بدجنس بودن است.



**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Joe offended Mike by saying mean things about his valentine, Jane.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ Mike found a bunch of pine trees.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ Joe was a decent person at the beginning of the reading.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ Mike persisted even though the chore was very hard.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ Mike used his elbows to put together loose pieces.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ Mike told Joe he was sharing his new sled because he was a civil person.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. Which item did Mike NOT use when building the sled?  
a. Ax  
b. Nail  
c. Alley  
d. Valentine
2. At the end of the reading, Joe \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. was grateful that Mike was nice  
b. did not get to ride on the sled  
c. irritated Mike again  
d. said he was kidding
3. Why did Mike feel a painful sensation?  
a. Joe teased him with the hammer.  
b. He dragged the wood home.  
c. He got a scar on his face.  
d. He bumped his elbow on the boards.
4. According to the reading, when did Mike build the sled?  
a. The next morning  
b. Overnight  
c. Before school  
d. Throughout the day



v.

**bloom**

[blu:m]

شکوفه کردن، گل دادن



❖ When a plant blooms, it makes flowers.

➤ Roses look so pretty when they bloom.

➤ گل‌های رز وقتی شکوفه می‌دهند، بسیار زیبا به نظر می‌آیند.

adj.

**compact**

[,kəm'pækt]

فشرده، متراکم، کوچک



❖ If something is compact, it is smaller than normal.

➤ A laptop computer is much more compact than a desktop model.

➤ لپ‌تاپ از کامپیوتر رومیزی خیلی فشرده‌تر (کوچک‌تر) است.

n.

**curl**

[kɜ:l]

(موی) فر، پیچ، حلقه



❖ A curl is a small piece of something with a round shape.

➤ The colorful ribbons were bent into curls.

➤ روبان‌های رنگی خم شده و پیچ و تاب خورده بودند.

v.

**decay**

[di'kei]

پوساندن، خراب کردن یا شدن



❖ To decay is to be destroyed naturally.

➤ The old wooden house was slowly decaying.

➤ خانه چوبی قدیمی به آرامی خراب می‌شد.



n.

dessert

[di'zɜ:t]

دسر



- ❖ dessert is a sweet food that you eat after a meal.
- Kayla wants ice cream for dessert.

➤ کایلا برای دسر بستنی می‌خواهد.

v.

dip

[dɪp]

فرو بردن، غوطه ور کردن



- ❖ To dip something is to put part of it into a liquid for a short time.
- Laurel dipped her strawberry into the chocolate.

➤ لورل توت فرنگی خود را در شکلات فرو برد.

adj.

distant

['dɪst(ə)nt]

دور، دوردست



- ❖ If something is distant, it is far away.
- Michael could barely see the distant island.

➤ مایکل به سختی می‌توانست جزیره دوردست را ببیند.

n.

eclipse

[i'klɪps]

(گرفتگی ماه یا خورشید) خسوف، کسوف



- ❖ An eclipse is an occasion when the moon moves in front of the sun.
- A complete eclipse of the sun is a very rare occurrence.

➤ خورشید گرفتگی کامل پیشامد بسیار نادری است.





n.

**fairy**

[ˈfeəri]

پری



- ❖ A fairy is a small, magic creature with wings.
- There are usually fairies in fantasy stories.

➤ پری‌ها معمولاً در داستان‌های فانتزی وجود دارند.

n.

**grace**

[ɡreɪs]

ظرافت، وقار



- ❖ grace is a quality of moving in a smooth, relaxed and attractive way.
- The ballerina danced with grace.

➤ رقص باله با ظرافت رقصید.

n.

**leisure**

[ˈleɪzə]

اوقات فراغت



- ❖ leisure is time when you do not have to do work.
- Eve likes to listen to music in her leisure time.

➤ ایو دوست دارد در اوقات فراغت خود به موسیقی گوش دهد.

n.

**mankind**

[ˌmæŋˈkaɪnd]

بشر، بشریت، نوع بشر



- ❖ mankind is all of the world's people.

- All of mankind has to work to make this a better world.

➤ تمام بشریت باید کار کند تا این جهان را به جایی بهتر تبدیل کند.



n.

passion

['pæʃ(ə)n]

شور و اشتیاق، علاقه شدید



- ❖ passion is a very strong feeling of wanting to do something.
- She had a passion for dancing.

➤ او علاقهٔ شدیدی به رقصیدن داشت.

n.

pillow

['pɪləʊ]

بالش



- ❖ A pillow is something that you put your head on when you sleep.
- When I travel, I usually take along my favorite pillow.

➤ وقتی سفر می‌کنم، معمولاً بالش مورد علاقه‌ام را با خودم می‌برم.

n.

pulse

[pʌls]

نبض، ضربان



- ❖ A pulse is the beat of the heart.
- The doctor checked the patient's pulse by feeling his wrist.

➤ دکتر با لمس کردن مچ بیمار، نبض او را کنترل کرد.

v.

refresh

[rɪ'freʃ]

سرحال آوردن، سرزنده کردن



- ❖ To refresh someone is to make them feel less hot or tired.
- The baby was refreshed after taking a cool bath.

➤ نوزاد بعد از حمام با آب سرد سرزنده شد.

v.

**sneeze**

[sni:z]

عطسه کردن



❖ To sneeze is to suddenly blow air out of your nose and mouth.

➤ He sneezed after smelling the flower.

➤ بعد از بوییدن گل عطسه کرد.

n.

**spice**

[spais]

ادویه، چاشنی



❖ A spice is a flavor for food and drinks.

➤ Two common spices found in many homes are salt and pepper.

➤ دو ادویه متداول که در بسیاری از خانه‌ها پیدا می‌شوند، نمک و فلفل هستند.

v.

**whistle**

['(h)wisl]

سوت زدن



❖ To whistle is to make a sound by putting your lips together and blowing.

➤ As he was listening to music, Daryl whistled.

➤ داریل درحالی که به موسیقی گوش می‌داد، سوت می‌زد.

n.

**wool**

[wul]

پشم



❖ wool is the hair that a sheep has.

➤ Grandma wants to use the blue wool to knit me a sweater.

➤ مادربزرگ می‌خواهد از نخ پشمی آبی استفاده کند تا برای من ژاکت ببافد.



# Exercise 1

## PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- far away  
a. compact                      b. leisure                      c. distant                      d. passion
- a sweet thing to eat  
a. dessert                      b. wool                      c. mankind                      d. bloom
- a small magical creature  
a. pulse                      b. pillow                      c. grace                      d. fairy
- an event that covers the sun  
a. whistle                      b. decay                      c. eclipse                      d. curl
- to make someone feel less tired  
a. spice                      b. refresh                      c. dip                      d. sneeze

## PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- whistle  
a. a flavor                      b. to make noise with one's lips  
c. people                      d. a flower
- compact  
a. far                      b. not at work  
c. small                      d. to help tired people
- wool  
a. sheep's hair                      b. magic creature  
b. something to eat                      d. strong feeling
- grace  
a. to chase after                      b. to get old and rot  
c. a nice way to move                      d. in the shape of a circle
- dip  
a. to blow out air                      b. something soft for your head  
c. to put in and out                      d. one of the things on your feet
- spice  
a. a flavor added to food or drink                      b. something with a round shape  
c. to make one feel less tired                      d. a sweet thing to eat
- leisure  
a. time when you do not have to work                      b. to become naturally destroyed  
c. the hair of sheep                      d. a feeling of wanting
- curl  
a. to get old and fall apart                      b. something with a curve  
c. something small                      d. to go after
- pillow  
a. something you sleep on                      b. the quality of moving well  
c. an event that covers the sun                      d. far away
- pulse  
a. not at work                      b. a magic creature  
c. the beat of one's heart                      d. to go away

## Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. distant / compact

Some scientists think that in the \_\_\_\_\_ future, we are going to use all of our fuel. One way to use less fuel is to drive a \_\_\_\_\_ car.

2. pulse / eclipse

Watching the \_\_\_\_\_ was very exciting. Afterwards, I could feel my \_\_\_\_\_ going very fast.

3. mankind / grace

Early members of \_\_\_\_\_ walked slowly and strangely. However, people learned how to move with \_\_\_\_\_ over the years.

4. desserts / spice

My favorite \_\_\_\_\_ is cinnamon. I put it in all of my favorite \_\_\_\_\_.

5. bloom / decay

In the fall, the flowers do not \_\_\_\_\_. I clean them up when they start to \_\_\_\_\_.

6. refresh / whistled

She \_\_\_\_\_ a song while she took a shower to \_\_\_\_\_ herself.

7. wool / curls

When my father was a boy, he learned all about a sheep's \_\_\_\_\_. For example, he learned that it forms \_\_\_\_\_.

8. fairy / leisure

Jennifer likes to paint in her \_\_\_\_\_ time. The most recent picture she painted was of a \_\_\_\_\_.

9. sneezing / dipped

Kelly \_\_\_\_\_ her feet into the pool but decided not to get in because she was \_\_\_\_\_ a lot. She was afraid she might get others sick if she got in.

10. pillow / passion

The baby has a \_\_\_\_\_ for soft things. One of the things that he loves the most is his \_\_\_\_\_.



# Tiny Tina

In a **distant** land, there was a kingdom where **fairies** lived. Tina was a fairy. She had yellow **curls** and wore a dress made of **wool**. She always moved with **grace**. However, because of her **compact** size, she was scared of **mankind**.

One day, there was an **eclipse** of the sun. The fairies didn't know what was happening. They were scared, so they ran away.

Tina looked for a place to hide. She found a garden with flowers **blooming**. Tina had a **passion** for flowers. She decided to hide there. She became sleepy and made a **pillow** with some leaves. She **whistled** happily as she worked, and she fell asleep.

Suddenly, somebody **sneezed**. The sound woke Tina up. She saw a very big face looking at her! Tina was so scared that she couldn't move. She could feel her **pulse** going very fast.

The big woman went into her house. When she came back, she gave Tina a cup.

The woman sat on the ground among some **decaying** leaves. Tina **dipped** a finger in the cup and tasted it. It was tea with all kinds of delicious **spices** in it. Tina felt **refreshed** after drinking the tea.

"I'm Wilma," the lady said. "I spend all my **leisure** time in my garden cutting flowers. Would you like some **dessert**?"

Tina said yes. She was hungry, and she wasn't frightened anymore. She took a bite of cake and relaxed. "How did you get to my garden?"

Tina told Wilma how she got lost.

"That's terrible! Let us take you home."

"Actually, I think that I want to stay with you," Tina said. She wasn't scared of big people anymore. Wilma and Tina lived happily ever after.





## تینای کوچک

در سرزمینی دور، یک قلمرو پادشاهی وجود داشت که در آن پری‌ها زندگی می‌کردند. تینا یک پری بود. موهایی فر و زرد رنگ داشت و لباسی از جنس پشم می‌پوشید. او همیشه با وقار حرکت می‌کرد. با این وجود، به خاطر اندازه کوچکش، از انسان‌ها می‌ترسید.

یک روز، خورشید گرفتگی شد. پری‌ها نمی‌دانستند که چه اتفاقی در حال رخ دادن است. آنها ترسیده بودند، بنابراین فرار کردند. تینا به دنبال جایی برای قایم شدن بود. او باغی با گل‌هایی در حال شکوفه دادن پیدا کرد. تینا عاشق گل‌ها بود.

تصمیم گرفت که آنجا پنهان شود. خواب آلود شد و با تعدادی برگ یک بالشت درست کرد. در حین کار کردن با خوشحالی سوت می‌زد و به خوابش برد. ناگهان، یکی عطسه کرد. صدا تینا را بیدار کرد. صورتی بسیار بزرگ دید که به او نگاه می‌کرد.

تینا آنقدر ترسیده بود که نمی‌توانست تکان بخورد. او می‌توانست حس کند که نبضش سریع می‌زند. زن بزرگ به خانه او رفت. وقتی که برگشت، یک فنجان به تینا داد.

زن روی زمین در کنار برگ‌های رو به نابودی و پوسیده شدن نشست. تینا انگشتش را در فنجان فرو برد و آن را مزه کرد. چایی بود با تمامی چاشنی‌های خوشمزه داخلش. تینا بعد از خوردن چایی احساس تازگی کرد. زن گفت: "من ویلما هستم. تمام وقت استراحتم رو در باغم به بریدن گل‌ها می‌گذرانم. دسر می‌خوای؟" تینا گفت بله. گرسنه بود، و دیگر نمی‌ترسید. یک گاز از کیک زد و آرام شد.

"چطور به باغ من آمدی؟" تینا به ویلما گفت که چطور گم شده است. "این خیلی وحشتناکه! بیا ببریمت خونه." تینا گفت: "راستش، فکر کنم می‌خوام با شما بمونم." دیگه از افراد بزرگ نمی‌ترسید. ویلما و تینا برای همیشه با هم با خوشبختی زندگی کردند.

# Reading Comprehension

4

## PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Tina made a pillow of leaves while she whistled.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ Tina wore a dress made of decayed flowers.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ Tina decided to hide in the garden.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ Tina had a passion for desserts.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ The fairies left because they were scared by the eclipse.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ Wilma gave Tina some tea for dessert.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## PART B Answer the questions.

1. Why did Tina suddenly wake up?
  - a. She felt refreshed.
  - b. She heard someone sneeze.
  - c. The leaves were decayed.
  - d. She had a fast pulse.
2. All of the following describe Tina EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. she had curls in her hair
  - b. she moved with grace
  - c. she did not like tea with spice
  - d. she was compact
3. What does Wilma do with the flowers?
  - a. She makes dessert with them.
  - b. She cuts them.
  - c. She dips them in gold.
  - d. She lets them decay.
4. Where did Tina live before she met Wilma?
  - a. In Wilma's garden
  - b. In a tiny house
  - c. On a street with big cars
  - d. In a distant country



v.

**acquaint**

[ə'kweɪnt]

آشنا کردن، آگاه کردن، مطلع کردن

- ❖ To acquaint is to get to know something or someone.
- Nancy acquainted herself with the new computer.

➤ نانسی با کامپیوتر جدید آشنا شد.



n.

**cemetery**

['semətɪ]

قبرستان، گورستان

- ❖ A cemetery is where people are buried when they die.
- Some people are scared of cemeteries.

➤ برخی افراد از قبرستان‌ها می‌ترسند.



v.

**curse**

[kɜ:s]

نفرین کردن، لعنت کردن

- ❖ To curse someone or something is to hope that bad things happen to them.
- The witch cursed the village.

➤ جادوگر روستا را نفرین کرد.



n.

**disguise**

[dɪs'gaɪz]

تغییر قیافه، لباس مبدل

- ❖ A disguise is something you wear so people cannot tell who you are.
- Everyone knew that it was Dad in the Santa disguise.

➤ همه می‌دانستند پدر بود که در لباس بابانوئل بود.





adj.

**fancy**

['fæɪn(t)sɪ]

تجملی، مجل



- ❖ If something is fancy, it is nicer than normal.
- Their table was all set for a fancy dinner.

➤ میزشان برای شامی تجملی چیده شده بود.

n.

**flashlight**

['flæʃlaɪt]

چراغ قوه



- ❖ A flashlight is a small electric light that you carry in your hand.
- We took a flashlight when we went camping.

➤ وقتی به اردو رفتیم چراغ قوه بردیم.

n.

**hood**

[hʊd]

کلاه



- ❖ A hood is part of a coat that goes over your head.
- She put on her hood to keep her head warm.

➤ او کلاهش را سر کرد تا سرش گرم بماند.

n.

**inhabitant**

[ɪn'hæbɪt(ə)nt]

ساکن، سکنه



- ❖ An inhabitant is a person who lives in a certain place.
- The number of inhabitants in the countryside is increasing.

➤ تعداد سکنه در حومه شهر رو به افزایش است.

v.

**nourish**

['nɒrɪʃ]

تغذیه کردن، خوراندن



❖ To nourish something is to give it food that it needs to live.

➤ A good mother will nourish her baby every day.

➤ یک مادر خوب هر روز کودک خود را تغذیه می‌کند.

n.

**pirate**

['paɪəɾət]

دزد دریایی



❖ A pirate is a sailor who steals things from other boats.

➤ pirates are very scary characters.

➤ دزدان دریایی شخصیت‌های بسیار ترسناکی هستند.

n.

**publication**

[ˌpʌblɪ'keɪʃ(ə)n]

نشریه، انتشار



❖ A publication is something printed, like a newspaper or book.

➤ She's been a subscriber to that publication for over ten years.

➤ بیش از ده سال است که او مشترک آن نشریه است.

n.

**riddle**

['rɪdl]

معما، چیستان



❖ A riddle is a question that is difficult to answer but meant to be funny.

➤ I could not answer Wendy's riddle, but it made me laugh.

➤ نتوانستم به معمای وندی جواب بدهم، اما من را خنداندم.



v.

rot

[rɒt]

پوسیدن، فاسد شدن



- ❖ When something rots, it slowly gets softer and is destroyed.
- The old log began to rot in the forest.

➤ کنده‌ی قدیمی در جنگل شروع به پوسیدن کرد.

v.

scare

[skeə]

ترسیدن، ترساندن



- ❖ To scare means to cause one to feel frightened.
- I was scared by the sight of the monster.

➤ با دیدن منظره هیولا ترسیدم.

adv.

shortly

['ʃɔ:tlɪ]

به زودی



- ❖ If something will happen shortly, it will happen very soon.
- My workday will end shortly.

➤ روز کاری من به زودی تمام خواهد شد.

n.

skeleton

['skelɪt(ə)n]

اسکلت، استخوان بندی



- ❖ A skeleton is the bones of a body.
- There is a skeleton in the science classroom.

➤ در کلاس علوم یک اسکلت وجود دارد.



v.

**spoil**

[spɔɪl]

خراب شدن، گندیدن، فاسد شدن

❖ If something spoils, it turns bad or rots.

➤ We left the fruit out too long, and it spoiled.

➤ میوه را مدت زیادی بیرون گذاشتیم و فاسد شد.



v.

**starve**

[stɑ:v]

به شدت گرسنه بودن

❖ If a person starves, they do not get enough to eat and sometimes die.

➤ During the war, many people starved.

➤ طی جنگ، افراد زیادی از شدت گرسنگی مردند.



n.

**thrill**

[θrɪl]

هیجان، شور، شوق و شعف

❖ A thrill is an exciting feeling.

➤ The boys enjoy the thrill of surfing a big wave.

➤ پسرها از هیجان موجسواری بر روی موجی بزرگ لذت می‌برند.



adj.

**wicked**

['wɪkɪd]

بدجنس، پلید، بد ذات

❖ If something is wicked, it is very bad or evil.

➤ My boss is a very wicked man.

➤ مدیر من مرد بسیار بدجنسی است.



## Exercise 1

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. scared / cursed

Mary \_\_\_\_\_ the creature that came into her yard and \_\_\_\_\_ her dog.

2. skeletons / cemetery

I don't like to walk in the \_\_\_\_\_. I always think about the \_\_\_\_\_ that are under the ground there.

3. fancy / hood

My mother bought me a \_\_\_\_\_ new coat. My favorite part is the warm \_\_\_\_\_.

4. riddles / flashlight

When my friend stayed at my house, we sat with a \_\_\_\_\_. Instead of sleeping, we sat and told \_\_\_\_\_ for an hour!

5. disguise / wicked

Judy wanted to find a \_\_\_\_\_ that was scary. Finally, she decided to dress like a \_\_\_\_\_ witch.

6. rotted / nourish

We planted a vegetable garden to help \_\_\_\_\_ our family. But many of the plants \_\_\_\_\_ before we could eat them.

7. spoiled / starving

The poor family was \_\_\_\_\_ after all of their food \_\_\_\_\_.

8. inhabitant / shortly

Tim loves being an \_\_\_\_\_ of that town. \_\_\_\_\_ after he moved there, he made many friends.

9. publication / thrill

I entered a contest that was in my favorite \_\_\_\_\_. Imagine the \_\_\_\_\_ when I won!

10. acquainted / pirates

Christie \_\_\_\_\_ me with her city's library. Since then, I have read every book they have about \_\_\_\_\_.

**Choose the answer that best fits the question.**

- Which of the following best describes an evil person?  
a. Shortly      b. Curse      c. Fancy      d. Wicked
- Which one is a feeling?  
a. A thrill      b. A hood      c. A flashlight      d. An inhabitant
- Which one can you wear?  
a. A cemetery      b. A disguise      c. A publication      d. A riddle
- Which of the following is most related to death?  
a. Spoil      b. Acquaint      c. Starve      d. Nourish
- Which of the following is most commonly related to the ocean?  
a. Rot      b. Scare      c. Skeleton      d. Pirate

**Exercise 3****Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.**

- Mom says we need to hurry because the game will start very soon.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- It's a good idea to get to know with co-workers.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- My little brother bothered me all day by asking me to solve his difficult questions.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- A reporter at that newspaper won a prize.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I am an individual who lives in the central part of town.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- He was crying because he was caused to feel fright.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I want to buy that really nice dress I saw in the store.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I need a light I can carry to see in the dark cabin.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The children were afraid that the witch would hope bad things would happen to them.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The part of your coat that covers your head keeps your head nice and warm.  
\_\_\_\_\_



# Trick-or-treat!

Many different cultures have had traditions about the dead. People in places like Ireland, China, Egypt and Mexico believed that souls needed food. They thought the food **nourished** them on their journey from **cemeteries** to heaven. People had to put out good things for souls to eat. However, if the food **rotted** or **spoiled**, the soul got mad. The **wicked** soul might **curse** the family and make them **starve** during the winter.

In other places, people begged for food on a holiday that remembers the souls of dead saints. People wore **disguises** with **hoods** that covered their faces. If they did not get food, they played a trick on the home. For this reason, the activity is known as “trick-or-treating.” **Shortly** after people first began trick-or-treating, parents started sending their children to beg on that day. Housewives gave the children food if they performed a song or a dance. When people moved to America from all over the world, they brought this tradition with them.

**Inhabitants** of villages started trick-or-treating in the early 1900s. In 1939 a children’s **publication acquainted** the whole country with the tradition. It became very popular.

Today, trick-or-treaters are not begging for food, and they are not **scared** of souls. They just enjoy the **thrill** of dressing up like creatures and getting candy. Ghosts and **skeletons** are favorite costumes. But some children wear **fancy** disguises, like **pirates**. They carry **flashlights** instead of fires. In some places, children still perform songs or **riddles** to get candy. But most of the time, they just say “Trick-or-Treat!”



## Trick Or Treat

بسیاری از فرهنگ‌های مختلف سنت‌هایی دربارهٔ مردگان داشته‌اند. مردم در جاهایی مانند ایرلند، چین، مصر و مکزیک اعتقاد داشتند که روح‌ها به غذا نیاز دارند. فکر می‌کردند که غذا آنها را در سفر خود از قبرستان‌ها به بهشت تغذیه می‌کند.

مردم باید چیزهای خوب بیرون می‌گذاشتند تا ارواح بخورند. با این وجود، اگر غذا فاسد یا خراب می‌شد، روح عصبانی می‌شد. روح پلید ممکن بود آن خانواده را نفرین کند و کاری کند آنها در زمستان گرسنگی بکشند.

در جاهای دیگر، مردم التماس غذا می‌کردند در تعطیلاتی که ارواح بزرگان مرده را به یاد می‌آوردند. مردم لباسهایی مبدل کلاه‌دار می‌پوشیدند که صورت آنها را می‌پوشاند.

اگر آنها غذا پیدا نمی‌کردند، روی آن خانه حقه‌ای پیاده می‌کردند. به همین خاطر، این عمل به نام "trick or treat" شناخته می‌شود. مدتی کوتاه پس از آغاز تریک اور تریت، پدر و مادرها شروع به فرستادن بچه‌های خود برای گدایی کردند.

زن‌های خانه‌دار اگر بچه‌ها آواز می‌خواندند یا می‌رقصیدند به آنها غذا می‌دادند. وقتی مردم از سرتاسر دنیا به آمریکا نقل مکان کردند، این سنت را با خود آوردند. ساکنین روستاها در اوایل قرن بیستم تریک اور تریت را شروع کردند.

در سال 1939، یک انتشارات کودکان تمام کشور را با این سنت آشنا کرد. خیلی معروف شد. امروزه، تریک اور تریت به معنای التماس برای غذا نیست و آنها از ارواح نمی‌ترسند. آنها فقط لذت می‌برند از هیجان اینکه مثل موجودات لباس بپوشند و آبنبات بگیرند.

ارواح و اسکلت‌ها لباس‌های (مخصوص) پرترفدار هستند. اما برخی از بچه‌ها لباس‌های جالبی مثلاً دزدان دریایی را می‌پوشند. به جای آتش چراغ قوه حمل می‌کنند. در برخی از جاها، بچه‌ها هنوز برای گرفتن شیرینی ترانه اجرا می‌کنند و معما می‌پرسند. ولی اکثر اوقات، آنها فقط می‌گویند: "تریک اور تریت!"

**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ People from places like Iceland, Italy, Kenya and Canada believed souls needed food.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ Many cultures believed that souls needed food to nourish them on their journey back to life.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ Housewives gave children food if they did chores around their homes.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ Shortly after a children's publication wrote about trick-or-treating, it became popular.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ Children often wear fancy disguises for trick-or-treating today.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ Inhabitants from villages started trick-or-treating in the 1940s.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. Which of the following is the most popular disguise?  
a. Hood  
b. Skeleton  
c. Creature  
d. Pirate
2. Why did souls need food?  
a. Theirs rotted  
b. They were starving  
c. For their long journey to heaven  
d. To obtain new bodies
3. What did the souls do when they left cemeteries?  
a. Got new bodies  
b. Dug up skeletons  
c. Went to heaven  
d. Got acquainted with people
4. Why do children perform riddles when they trick-or-treat?  
a. To get candy  
b. To get flashlights  
c. To get costumes  
d. To get a thrill



v.

**alert**

[ə'lɜ:t]

هشدار دادن، خبر دادن

❖ To alert someone is to tell or warn them about something.

➤ The fire alarm alerted us that there was a problem.

➤ زنگ هشدار آتش ما را خبر کرد که مشکلی وجود دارد.



n.

**broadcast**

['brɔ:dka:st]

برنامه، نمایش (که از تلویزیون پخش می‌شود)

❖ A broadcast is a television or radio show.

➤ We watched the broadcast of the local news on TV.

➤ ما پخش اخبار محلی را از تلویزیون تماشا کردیم.



n.

**bulletin**

['bulɪtɪn]

گزارش خبری، اطلاعیه، بولتن

❖ A bulletin is a news report that talks about very recent and important events.

➤ There was a live bulletin reporting on the economy of the city.

➤ یک گزارش خبری زنده درباره اقتصاد شهر پخش می‌شد.



n.

**bump**

[bʌmp]

برآمدگی، ورم

❖ A bump is a small raised area on a surface.

➤ The monkey got a bump on his head because he was hit by a rock.

➤ سر میمون قلمبه شد چون سنگ به سر او اصابت کرد.





v.

**chop**

[tʃɒp]

ریز کردن، خرد کردن



- ❖ To chop something means to cut it into pieces with a tool.
- Mom chopped some vegetables to put into the stew.
- مامان مقداری سبزی خرد کرد تا در خورشت بریزد.

n.

**closet**

['kloʊzɪt]

کمد، گنجه



- ❖ A closet is a small room used to store things.
- Marie has many clothes inside of her closet.
- ماری لباس‌های زیادی در کمدش دارد.

v.

**console**

[kən'səʊl]

دلداری دادن، تسلی دادن



- ❖ To console someone who is sad means to make them comforted.
- When my dog ran away, my dad consoled me.
- وقتی سگ من فرار کرد، پدرم به من دلداری داد.

n.

**district**

['dɪstrɪkt]

ناحیه، بخش، منطقه



- ❖ A district is a small part of a city, county, state, or country.
- I live in a residential district of Seattle, Washington.
- من در منطقه مسکونی سیاتل، واشنگتون زندگی می‌کنم.

n.

**drawer**

['drɔ:ə]

کشو



❖ A drawer is a small part in furniture that is used to store things.

➤ I put my clothes into the empty drawers.

➤ من لباس‌هایم را در کشوهای خالی می‌گذارم.

adj.

**endure**

[in'djuə]

تحمل کردن، تاب آوردن



❖ To endure something tough means to do or go through it.

➤ She had to endure her husband shouting all day long.

➤ او باید تمام طول روز فریادهای شوهرش را تحمل می‌کرد.

v.

**execute**

['eksɪkjʊ:t]

اعدام کردن



❖ To execute someone means to kill them as a legal punishment.

➤ Some people are executed for serious crimes.

➤ بعضی افراد به خاطر جرم‌های جدی اعدام می‌شوند.

v.

**grasp**

[gra:sp]

محکم گرفتن



❖ To grasp something means to hold it.

➤ He grasped the bag of money tightly.

➤ او کیف پول را محکم گرفت.





adj.

rear

[rɪə]

عقب، پشت

❖ When something is in the rear of something, it is in the back.

➤ The man loaded the rear of his truck with boxes.

➤ مرد عقب کامیون خود را با جعبه‌ها بار زد.



n.

senator

['senətə]

سناتور

❖ A senator is someone who makes laws for a state.

➤ The young senator promised to make laws that would help the people.

➤ سناتور جوان قول داد قوانینی را وضع کند که به مردم کمک می‌کنند.



n.

skull

[skʌl]

جمجمه

❖ A skull is the hard part of your head. Your brain is inside of it.

➤ The brain is protected by the skull.

➤ مغز توسط جمجمه محافظت می‌شود.



v.

stir

[stɜ:]

هم زدن، مخلوط کردن

❖ To stir something means to mix it using something small, like a spoon.

➤ Mom stirred the batter until it was smooth.

➤ مامان مایه کیک را هم زد تا یکدست شد.



v.

tap

[tæp]

آرام ضربه زدن



❖ To tap something is to hit it lightly.

➤ He tapped the keys of the keyboard to write a short word.

➤ او برای نوشتن یک کلمه کوتاه به کلیدهای صفحه کلید به آرامی ضربه زد.

adj.

tremendous

[tri'mendəs]

عظیم، خیلی بزرگ



❖ When something is tremendous, it is very large.

➤ The Earth's oceans are filled with a tremendous amount of water.

➤ اقیانوس‌های کره زمین با مقدار بسیار زیادی از آب پر شده‌اند.

prep.

underneath

[,ʌndə'ni:θ]

زیر



❖ When something is underneath something else, it is below or lower than it.

➤ The roots of a tree are located underneath the ground.

➤ ریشه‌های یک درخت زیر زمین هستند.

n.

worm

[wɜ:m]

کرم



❖ A worm is a small animal with a long, thin body.

➤ worms are often used to help catch fish.

➤ اغلب از کرم‌ها برای گرفتن ماهی استفاده می‌شود.

## Exercise 1

Choose the word that is a better fit for each blank.

1. districts / senator

The \_\_\_\_\_ lived in one of the poorest \_\_\_\_\_ in the country.

2. skull / tapped

When he \_\_\_\_\_ his fist on the top of his \_\_\_\_\_, it made a funny sound.

3. underneath / worm

If you want to find a \_\_\_\_\_, try looking \_\_\_\_\_ rocks or pieces of wood.

4. consoled / broadcast

She \_\_\_\_\_ her children by watching a humorous \_\_\_\_\_ with them after school.

5. execute / tremendous

She felt \_\_\_\_\_ sorrow after her husband was \_\_\_\_\_ for his crime.

6. endure / bulletin

He decided to listen to the news \_\_\_\_\_ because he could no longer \_\_\_\_\_ the boredom of being home alone.

7. grasp / stir

The soup was very thick. He had to \_\_\_\_\_ the spoon with both hands in order to \_\_\_\_\_ it.

8. alerted / rear

The television news \_\_\_\_\_ us of the storm. We put the car in the \_\_\_\_\_ of the house where it would be protected.

9. chop / drawer

She looked at all the tools in the \_\_\_\_\_ but could not find anything to use to \_\_\_\_\_ the meat.

10. bump / closet

Many toys had been piled beneath the carpet in the \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ I got from hitting my head on the door was painful.



## Exercise 2

6

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. The mother comforted her crying child.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Every Sunday, the family watched a television show about animals.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I couldn't find my coat in the small room.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. John left his paper lower than his school books.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The person who makes laws sat behind a large desk.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. In order to get over the wall, the cat had to make a very large jump.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Harold slowed the car down as he drove over the small raised part.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. There is very little rain in my part of the state.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Because he committed such a horrible crime, he was killed by the legal system.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. The cook cut into pieces the vegetables for his soup.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Exercise 3

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. Which of the following best describes a news program?  
a. Grasp                      b. Bulletin                      c. Tap                      d. Alert
2. Which one do you put things into?  
a. A drawer                      b. A bump                      c. A district                      d. A worm
3. Which of the following describes something in the back?  
a. Endure                      b. Skull                      c. Rear                      d. Tremendous
4. Which of the following does an alarm do for people?  
a. Alert them                      b. Console them                      c. Execute them                      d. Tap them
5. Which of the following means to go through something difficult?  
a. Chop                      b. Broadcast                      c. Stir                      d. Endure

# The Senator and the Worm

A rich **senator** lived in a big house. He had more money than anyone in his **district**. One day, he was sitting on a chair listening to a radio **broadcast**. As he listened to the news **bulletin**, a **worm** crawled from **underneath** the chair and onto his head.

His cook was in the kitchen **stirring** some spaghetti sauce. Suddenly, a cry from the senator **alerted** him. He ran to the **rear** of the house where the senator was sitting.

The cook looked and saw the worm. He tried to **console** the senator. "I'll take it off right away," he said.

"No!" shouted the senator. "I want you to kill it."

"But it's only a worm," the cook said. "Why should we **execute** it? It hasn't committed a crime."

The senator could not **endure** the worm on his head. "Hurry!" he shouted.

The cook looked through several **drawers**, but found nothing. Then he ran to the **closet** and took out a pipe. He returned to the senator and lifted the pipe over his head. He knew he couldn't just **tap** the worm. He was going to hit it hard. He **grasped** the pipe tightly.

"What are you waiting for?" said the senator. "Kill it!"

The cook swung the pipe at the senator's head.

"Oh, no," the worm said. "He's going to **chop** me in half." It jumped off the senator's head.

There was a **tremendous** noise. "Owww!" cried the senator.

A **bump** rose upon his **skull**. Meanwhile, the worm crawled outside.

"That was close," said the worm. "Instead of being nice, he wanted to hurt me. Now, that man has a big bump on his head."



## سناتور و کرم

یک سناتور پولدار در خانه‌ای بزرگ زندگی می‌کرد. او از همه افراد منطقه خود بیشتر پول داشت. یک روز او روی صندلی نشسته بود و به یک برنامه رادیویی گوش می‌کرد. در حین اینکه بولتن خبری گوش می‌کرد، یک کرم از زیر صندلی خزید و رفت روی سرش.

آشپز او داشت در آشپزخانه مقداری سس اسپاگتی را هم می‌زد. ناگهان فریاد از سوی سناتور او را از جا پراند. سمت قسمت پشتی خانه جایی که سناتور نشسته بود دوید. آشپز نگاه کرد و کرم را دید. او سعی کرد که سناتور را دلداری بدهد. گفت: "همین الان درش میارم." سناتور داد زد: "نه ازت می‌خوام که بکشیش."

آشپز گفت: "ولی این فقط یک کرم است چرا باید جانش را بگیریم." او جرمی مرتکب نشده. سناتور نمی‌توانست کرم روی سرش را تحمل کند. داد زد: "زود باش." آشپز چندتا کشو را گشت ولی چیزی پیدا نکرد. بعد به سمت کمد دوید و یک لوله در آورد. به سمت سناتور بازگشت و لوله را بالای سر او برد. می‌دانست نمی‌تواند صرفاً به کرک یک ضربه آرام بزند. داشت آماده می‌شد که محکم به آن ضربه بزند. او میله را محکم گرفت.

سناتور گفت: "منتظر چی هستی؟ بکشش!" آشپز لوله را تاب داد و روی سر سناتور کوبید. کرم گفت: "وای نه الان من را نصف می‌کند." کرم از سر سناتور پرید پایین. صدای بلندی آمد. سناتور داد زد: "والای!"

یک برآمدگی روی جمجمه‌اش بالا آمد. در این زمان کرم بیرون خزید.

کرم گفت: "نزدیک بود." "به جای اینکه آدم خوبی باشد می‌خواست به من صدمه بزند." حالا آن مرد یک برآمدگی بزرگ روی سرش دارد.



# Reading Comprehension

6

## PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ The senator had a lot of money.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ The senator was listening to a radio broadcast.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ The senator wanted the cook to kill the worm.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ The cook found a pipe in one of the drawers.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ The cook knew he was going to tap the worm.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ The worm was chopped in half on the senator's head.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## PART B Answer the questions.

1. What was the senator doing when the worm crawled onto his head?
  - a. Listening to the radio
  - b. Watching a broadcast
  - c. Looking in the closet
  - d. Consoling the cook
2. Which of the following did the cook NOT do?
  - a. Stir some spaghetti sauce
  - b. Look through several drawers
  - c. Hit the senator's skull
  - d. Execute the worm
3. Why did the senator tell the cook to hurry?
  - a. He was hiding in the rear of the house.
  - b. He knew he had to alert the cook.
  - c. He couldn't endure the worm on his head.
  - d. He had heard a tremendous noise.
4. After the cook hit the senator, where did the worm go?
  - a. Into the kitchen
  - b. Underneath the chair
  - c. Outside the house
  - d. Onto the cook's head

v.

**abandon**

[ə'bændən]

ترک کردن، رها کردن



❖ To abandon something is to leave it forever or for a long time.

➤ The old room had been abandoned years before.

➤ اتاق قدیمی، سالها پیش رها شده بود.

adj.

**ambitious**

[æm'biʃəs]

بلند پرواز، جاه طلب



❖ If someone is ambitious, they want to be rich or successful.

➤ Kendra had to be ambitious to get into medical school.

➤ کندرا باید جاه طلب می بود که به دانشکده پزشکی برود.

v.

**bark**

[bɑ:k]

واقواق کردن



❖ When a dog barks, it makes a short, loud noise.

➤ The dog barked loudly and frighteningly.

➤ سگ با صدای بلند و به طرز ترسناکی واقواق کرد.

n.

**bay**

[beɪ]

خلیج کوچک



❖ A bay is an area near the ocean where the land goes inward.

➤ The Golden Gate Bridge crosses San Francisco bay.

➤ پل گلدن گیت از روی خلیج فرانسیسکو عبور می کند.



adj.

**brilliant**

[ˈbrɪliənt]

باهوش، با استعداد

- ❖ If someone is brilliant, they are very smart.
- My younger sister is brilliant for someone her age.

➤ خواهر کوچک‌ترم نسبت به سن خود باهوش است.

n.

**chin**

[tʃɪn]

چانه

- ❖ Your chin is the hard part at the bottom of your face.
- Luke pointed to the hair on his chin.

➤ لوک به موی رو چانه‌اش اشاره کرد.

n.

**complaint**

[kəmˈpleɪnt]

شکایت، گلایه

- ❖ A complaint is something you say to tell people that you don't like something.
- Mom said she didn't want to hear my brother's complaints.

➤ مامان گفت نمی‌خواهد شکایت‌های برادرم را بشوند.

adj.

**deaf**

[def]

ناشنوا، کر

- ❖ When someone is deaf, they cannot hear.

➤ Susan was born deaf.

➤ سوزان ناشنوا به دنیا آمد.







adj.

**enthusiastic** [ɪn,θju:zɪ'æstɪk]

مشتاق، علاقمند



- ❖ To be enthusiastic about something is to be excited by or interested in it.
- The man was enthusiastic about his job.

➤ آن مرد به شغل خود علاقمند بود.

n.

**expedition** [ˌɛksprɪ'dɪʃ(ə)n]

سفر اکتشافی



- ❖ An expedition is a long trip, usually to a place very far away.
- They got into their spaceship to begin their expedition.

➤ آنها سوار فضاپیمای خود شدند تا سفر اکتشافی‌شان را شروع کنند.

n.

**horizon** [hə'raɪz(ə)n]

افق



- ❖ The horizon is where the sky looks like it meets the ground.
- The sun dipped below the horizon.

➤ خورشید زیر خط افق پایین آمد.

adj.

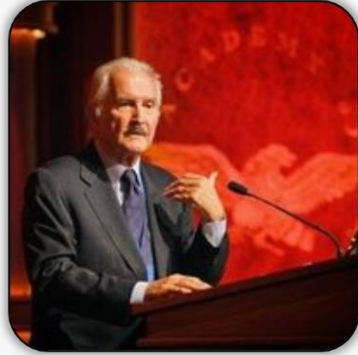
**loyal** ['lɔɪəl]

وفادار



- ❖ To be loyal to something or someone is to agree to always help them.
- The three friends are very loyal to each other.

➤ سه دوست بسیار به یکدیگر وفادار هستند.



n.

**mayor**

[meə]

شهردار

- ❖ The mayor is the person in charge of a city.
- The mayor of my hometown is quite a powerful speaker.
- شهردار زادگاه من یک سخنران کاملاً قدرتمند است.



adj.

**mutual**

['mju:tʃuəl]

متقابل، دو طرفه، مشترک

- ❖ If something is mutual, it is felt in the same way by two or more people.
- Robert likes Sarah. The feeling is mutual.
- رابرت سارا را دوست دارد. این حس متقابل است.



adj.

**overweight**

[,əʊvə'weɪt]

چاق، دارای اضافه وزن

- ❖ If someone is overweight, they are very fat.
- Roger eats too much, so now he's overweight.
- راجر خیلی غذا می‌خورد، برای همین حالا اضافه وزن دارد.



n.

**refuge**

['refju:ʒ]

پناهگاه

- ❖ A refuge is a place where you go to be safe.
- When it started to rain, she found refuge in the house.
- وقتی باران شروع شد، او در خانه پناه گرفت.



v.

**restore**

[ri'stɔ:]

ترمیم کردن، تعمیر کردن، بازسازی کردن



❖ To restore something is to put it back the way it was.

➤ Victor restored the old car.

➤ ویکتور ماشین قدیمی را تعمیر کرد.

v.

**rub**

[rʌb]

مالیدن، ساییدن



❖ To rub something is to push on it and move your hand back and forth.

➤ Mom's feet were sore, so she rubbed them.

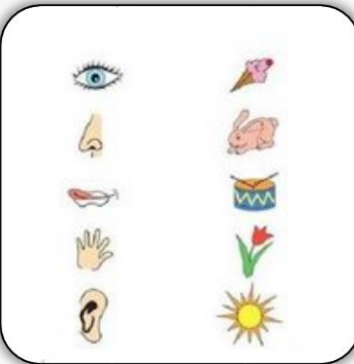
➤ پاهای مامان درد می‌کردند، برای همین آنها را مالش داد.

n.

**senses**

[sen(t)s]

حواس (پنجگانه)



❖ Your senses are how you see, taste, hear, feel and smell.

➤ It would be hard to live without your five senses.

➤ زندگی بدون داشتن حواس پنجگانه سخت است.

n.

**veterinarian** [,vet(ə)ri'neəriən]

دامپزشک



❖ A veterinarian is a doctor that takes care of animals.

➤ Wanda became a veterinarian because she loves dogs.

➤ واندا دامپزشک شد چون سگ‌ها را دوست دارد.



# Exercise 1

## PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- a doctor for animals  
a. ambitious      b. veterinarian      c. mayor      d. mutual
- to leave something  
a. rub      b. bark      c. abandon      d. restore
- very smart  
a. loyal      b. enthusiastic      c. deaf      d. brilliant
- a safe place  
a. refuge      b. horizon      c. bay      d. expedition
- the bottom part of a face  
a. complaint      b. chin      c. senses      d. overweight

## PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- mutual  
a. fat  
c. smart  
b. having the same relationship with each other  
d. hard working
- complaint  
a. a trip  
c. a safe place  
b. a statement of unhappiness  
d. where the land curves in
- bark  
a. a part of the face  
c. a sound made by a dog  
b. a doctor for animals  
d. the bottom of the sky
- enthusiastic  
a. unable to hear  
c. to agree to do the job  
b. to leave behind  
d. wanting to do something very much
- mayor  
a. a town leader  
c. to put back  
b. to press back and forth  
d. the ability to see and touch
- rub  
a. to move your hand over  
c. to show displeasure  
b. the leader of a town  
d. a small inlet of water
- loyal  
a. to put back to the way before  
c. not able to hear  
b. weighing too much  
d. to always help
- horizon  
a. very smart  
c. where the sky and earth meet  
b. to want to be successful  
d. hard working
- restore  
a. to change to the way it used to be  
c. to agree to do the job  
b. to leave behind  
d. unable to hear
- senses  
a. having similar ideas  
c. how one sees, hears, and smell  
b. to press back and forth  
d. a far-away journey

## Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. Where could you put a boat?
  - a. On the horizon
  - b. In a refuge
  - c. In the bay
  - d. In an expedition
  
2. What would happen if you ate too much?
  - a. You might become overweight.
  - b. You would be brilliant.
  - c. You could become a veterinarian.
  - d. You might be loyal.
  
3. What helps you smell things?
  - a. The mayor
  - b. Your complaints
  - c. Being deaf
  - d. Your senses
  
4. Which of the following can you feel about a holiday?
  - a. Mutual
  - b. Ambitious
  - c. Enthusiastic
  - d. Abandon
  
5. What do you do to improve an old house?
  - a. Restore it
  - b. Bark at it
  - c. Rub it
  - d. Point your chin at it
  
6. What does it mean to be deaf?
  - a. You can't smell.
  - b. You are dead.
  - c. You can't hear.
  - d. You can't feel.
  
7. Which of these people goes on expeditions as part of their job?
  - a. An airplane pilot
  - b. A school teacher
  - c. A police officer
  - d. An engineer
  
8. Which of the following words is most likely to be related to the horizon?
  - a. Computer
  - b. School
  - c. Newspaper
  - d. Sun
  
9. Which of the following means to be rich and successful?
  - a. Mayor
  - b. Ambitious
  - c. Overweight
  - d. Loyal
  
10. Which of the following means having the same feelings as someone else?
  - a. Ambitious
  - b. Enthusiastic
  - c. Overweight
  - d. Mutual



# Patsy Ann

A long time ago in Alaska, a dog named Patsy Ann watched the **horizon**. Every day, she waited by the **bay** for ships returning from an **expedition**.

Patsy Ann was a **brilliant** dog, and she was very unique. She was **deaf**. She couldn't **bark**, either. But she used all of her other **senses** to know when a ship was near.

Patsy Ann lived on the streets. Her owners did not want her because she could not hear. So they **abandoned** her. She found **refuge** in a fancy hotel. Guests **rubbed** her back and scratched her **chin**. Many people gave her food. She became quite **overweight**.

She became very famous. Visitors to Alaska were **enthusiastic** about meeting her. They brought presents for her. They liked seeing her and the feeling was **mutual**. The **mayor** said Patsy Ann should be called the town's greeter\*.

The people in town loved Patsy Ann, too, even though she lived on the streets. They were willing to fight to keep her. A new law made all dogs wear a collar and get shots. The mayor received many **complaints**. People wanted Patsy Ann to be able to stay. One **ambitious** sailor got people to help. Together, they paid for Patsy Ann to go to the **veterinarian**. She got her shots and collar. She could stay.

When Patsy Ann died, everyone missed the town's **loyal** greeter. So the mayor hired someone to make a statue of Patsy Ann. He **restored** the town's greeter. Now, she sits at the dock forever, waiting for ships to come home.

\*greeter – a person whose job is to say hello to new people.





## پتسی ان

مدت‌ها پیش در آلاسکا، سگی به نام پاتسی ان افق را تماشا می‌کرد. هر روز، او در کنار خلیج منتظر برگشت کشتی‌ها از سفر اکتشافی می‌ماند. پتسی ان سگی باهوش و خیلی خاص بود. او ناشنوا بود. همینطور واق واق هم نمی‌توانست بکند.

اما از بقیهٔ حس‌های خود برای دانستن نزدیک شدن کشتی استفاده می‌کرد. پتسی ان در خیابان‌ها زندگی می‌کرد. صاحب‌هایش او را نمی‌خواستند چون او نمی‌توانست بشنود. بنابراین او را رها کردند.

در یک هتل مجلل جای پناه پیدا کرد. مهمان‌ها پشت او را می‌مالیدند و پوزه‌اش را می‌خاراندند. افراد زیادی به او غذا می‌دادند. بسیار اضافه وزن پیدا کرده بود. خیلی مشهور شده بود. بازدید کنندگان از آلاسکا مشتاق دیدن او بودند. آنها برای او هدیه می‌آوردند.

آنها دوست داشتند او را ببینند و این حس دو طرفه بود. شهردار گفت پتسی ان باید خوش آمد گوی شهر نامیده شود. مردم شهر پتسی ان را دوست داشتند، با وجود این که در خیابان‌ها زندگی می‌کرد. آنها حاضر بودند که برای نگه داشتن او بجنگند.

قانون جدید همهٔ سگ‌ها را ملزم به پوشیدن قلاده و زدن واکسن می‌کرد. شهردار شکایات زیادی را دریافت کرد. مردم می‌خواستند پتسی ان بماند. یک ملوان بلند پرواز مردم را برای کمک قانع کرد. باهم، هزینهٔ رفتن پتسی ان به دامپزشکی را پرداخت کردند. واکسن‌هایش را زد و قلاده گرفت. می‌توانست بماند.

وقتی پتسی ان مرد، همه دلشان برای خوش آمد گوی وفادار شهر تنگ شد. بنابراین شهردار یکی را استخدام کرد تا یک مجسمه از پتسی ان بسازد. او خوش آمد گوی شهر را برگرداند. حالا او برای همیشه در اسکله می‌نشیند و منتظر کشتی‌ها می‌ماند تا به خانه بیایند.

# Reading Comprehension

7

**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Patsy Ann liked to watch the bay.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_ Patsy Ann was abandoned by an expedition to Alaska.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_ Patsy Ann was a loyal greeter in the town.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_ The dog liked people and the feeling was mutual.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_ The law said that all dogs had to have a home to stay in town.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. \_\_\_ Patsy Ann barked at all of the ships coming in.

\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. What could Patsy Ann NOT do?

- a. Bark
- b. Use any of her senses
- c. Go to the veterinarian
- d. Find refuge

2. What was the sailor who helped Patsy Ann?

- a. Brilliant
- b. Ambitious
- c. Overweight
- d. Enthusiastic

3. Why did Patsy Ann go to the hotel?

- a. To get a new collar
- b. To wait for returning ships
- c. To have her hearing restored
- d. To get food

4. Why was the dog abandoned?

- a. Because she was overweight
- b. Because the veterinarian didn't like her
- c. Because she was deaf
- d. Because she was mean to them



n.

**anniversary** [ˌæniˈvɜːs(ə)rɪ]

سالروز، سالگرد

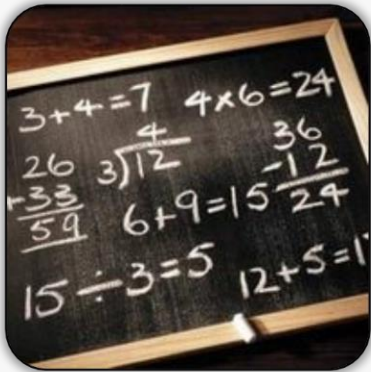


- ❖ An anniversary is a day that celebrates something from the past.
- My parents went out to eat for their wedding anniversary.
- والدین من به مناسبت سالگرد ازدواجشان برای غذا خوردن بیرون رفتند.

n.

**arithmetic** [əˈrɪθmətɪk]

ریاضی، حساب



- ❖ arithmetic is math.
- I like to study arithmetic at school.
- من مطالعه‌ی ریاضی در مدرسه را دوست دارم.

adj.

**ashamed** [əˈʃeɪmd]

شرمسار، شرمنده



- ❖ To be ashamed is to feel upset because you did something wrong or bad.
- He was ashamed when he found out that I knew about his past.
- وقتی فهمید من درباره گذشته‌اش می‌دانم، شرمنده شد.

v.

**burst** [bɜːst]

ترکیدن، منفجر شدن



- ❖ To burst is to suddenly break open or apart.
- The bomb burst over the city.
- بمب بر فراز شهر منفجر شد.





n.

**carpenter**

['kɑ:p(ə)ntə]

نجار



- ❖ A carpenter is a person who builds things with wood.
- We hired a carpenter to make a cupboard.

➤ یک نجار استخدام کردیم تا یک قفسه بسازد.

n.

**coal**

[kəʊl]

زغال سنگ، زغال



- ❖ coal is a hard black rock that you burn for heat.
- Many power stations burn coal to produce energy.

➤ بسیاری از نیروگاه‌های برق برای تولید انرژی زغال می‌سوزانند.

n.

**couch**

[kaʊtʃ]

مبل



- ❖ A couch is a long, soft seat that many people can sit on.
- Kim and Martin's new couch was very expensive.

➤ مبل جدید کیم و مارتین خیلی گران بود.

v.

**drip**

[drip]

چکه کردن، چکیدن



- ❖ When a liquid drips, just a little bit falls at a time.
- I heard water dripping from the faucet.

➤ صدای چکه‌های آب را از شیر شنیدم.



adj.

**elegant**

['elɪg(ə)nt]

شیک، آراسته

- ❖ If something is elegant, it is very fancy and pleasing.
- In Japan, women wear elegant kimonos on special occasions.
- در ژاپن، خانمها در مناسبت‌های خاص کیمونوهای شیکی می‌پوشند.



n.

**fabric**

['fæbrɪk]

بافت، پارچه

- ❖ fabric is cloth used to make clothes, furniture, etc.
- The towels were made from a soft fabric.
- حوله‌ها از تاروپود لطیفی تولید شده بودند.



n.

**highlands**

['haɪləndz]

سرزمین کوهستانی، ارتفاعات

- ❖ The highlands are high areas of land, usually with mountains.
- The man had a small home in the highlands.
- مرد یک خانه کوچک در مناطق کوهستانی داشت.



n.

**ivory**

['aɪv(ə)rɪ]

عاج

- ❖ ivory is a white, hard substance that comes from elephants.
- The elephant's long ivory tusks looked very impressive.
- عاج‌های بلند فیل بسیار تحسین برانگیز به نظر می‌آمدند.



n.

mill

[mɪl]

آسیاب



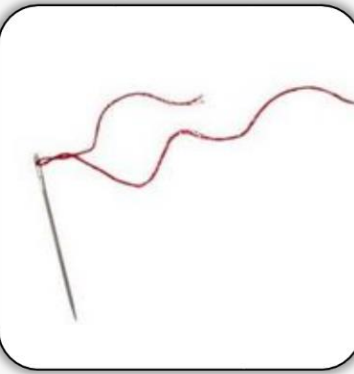
- ❖ A mill is a building where flour is made.
- The farmer took his wheat to the mill to make it into flour.
- کشاورز گندم خود را به آسیاب برد تا آن را آرد کند.

n.

needle

['ni:dl]

سوزن



- ❖ A needle is a small, sharp piece of metal that you use to make or fix clothes.
- I used a needle to fix the hole in my pants.
- از سوزن استفاده کردم تا سوراخ‌های شلوارم را درست کنم.

v.

polish

['pɒlɪʃ]

واکس زدن، برق انداختن، جلا دادن



- ❖ To polish something is to rub it in order to make it shiny.
- Mark spent all morning polishing his shoes for the wedding.
- مارک تمام صبح را صرف برق انداختن کفش‌هایش برای عروسی کرد.

v.

sew

[səʊ]

دوختن، خیاطی کردن



- ❖ To sew means to put pieces of cloth together using string.
- I learned to sew when I was a little girl.
- وقتی دختر کوچکی بودم، دوختن را یاد گرفتم.





n.

shed

[ʃed]

انبار، آونک



❖ A shed is a small building where you store things like tools.

➤ We have a small shed in the backyard for storage.

➤ در حیاط پشتی یک آونک کوچک برای انباری داریم.

n.

thread

[θred]

نخ



❖ A thread is a thin piece of string.

➤ I have many different colors of thread at home.

➤ من نخ‌های رنگی بسیار متنوعی در خانه دارم.

v.

trim

[trim]

اصلاح کردن، کوتاه کردن، چیدن



❖ To trim something is to cut it a little bit.

➤ I had my hair trimmed this afternoon.

➤ امروز عصر موی خود را کوتاه کردم.

adv.

upwards

[ˈʌpwəds]

رو به بالا، به سمت بالا



❖ If something goes upwards, it moves vertically higher.

➤ The kite went upwards further and further.

➤ بادبادک بیشتر و بیشتر به سمت بالا رفت.

## Exercise 1

Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. anniversary / elegant

Because it was their \_\_\_\_\_, my father bought my mother a gift. It was an \_\_\_\_\_ coat.

2. arithmetic / upwards

It takes a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ to design new airplanes. You have to know how to make them go \_\_\_\_\_ in the easiest way.

3. couch / ashamed

You should be \_\_\_\_\_ of yourself! You know you're not supposed to eat on the \_\_\_\_\_!

4. burst/ dripped

When the wind blew, the door \_\_\_\_\_ open. And since it was raining, water \_\_\_\_\_ into the room.

5. sew / carpenter

My brother is a \_\_\_\_\_, so he knows about construction. However, he doesn't know how to \_\_\_\_\_.

6. coal / highlands

I heard a news story about something in the \_\_\_\_\_. I guess they found \_\_\_\_\_ under the ground.

7. ivory / needle

Archeologist found \_\_\_\_\_ made from \_\_\_\_\_ in Africa.

8. threads / mill

People who work at the \_\_\_\_\_ do many things to stay safe. For example, they do not have \_\_\_\_\_ hanging from their clothing because they can get caught in the machinery.

9. fabric / polish

Bruce worked hard to \_\_\_\_\_ the wood floors. Afterwards, he wiped the floor with a soft \_\_\_\_\_.

10. shed / trim

On Saturday, my dad made me clean out the \_\_\_\_\_. I also had to \_\_\_\_\_ the bushes.

## Exercise 2

8

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. How good are you at math?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. There were some thin strings hanging from my shirt.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I wanted to get a little hair cut off today, but I had no time to make it to the salon.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The cloth was dirty from being outside.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Smoke from the fire rose high into the air.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Sometimes the dog goes inside the small building with tools when it gets cold.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. I live in the mountainous area of the country.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. The old place where they made flour was interesting to visit.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. I used to put cloth together with my grandmother.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. The silver was made to look shiny.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Exercise 3

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. What kind of material does a carpenter work with?  
a. Plastic                      b. Iron                      c. Brick                      d. Wood
2. Which of these things could drip?  
a. A dog                      b. Water                      c. A ball                      d. Dirt
3. What could you make with a needle?  
a. A shirt                      b. A car                      c. A computer                      d. A chair
4. What does it mean if your water pipes burst?  
a. They are new.                      b. They've been cleaned.  
c. They are frozen.                      d. They've exploded.
5. Which is the same color as ivory?  
a. A needle                      b. A tooth                      c. Coal                      d. Wood



# The Anniversary Gift

Joe was a **carpenter**. He built houses in the **highlands**. Joe's wife Stella used a **needle** and **thread** to **sew elegant** clothing. She only used beautiful **fabric** to make clothes.

Since they didn't have a lot of money, they lived in an old **shed**. Water **dripped** in when it rained. They had broken chairs instead of a **couch**. But they had **coal** for heat, and flour from the **mill** for bread. Together, they **trimmed** the bushes to make their house look nice. Joe and Stella were poor, but not **ashamed**. They were happy.

Sometimes in the evening, they walked downtown. They looked in store windows and dreamed. Stella wanted a hairbrush with an **ivory** handle. She pulled her hair **upwards** every day because she didn't have a brush to make it nice. Joe wanted to fix his grandfather's watch.

For their **anniversary**, Stella wanted to get Joe what he wanted. But then she did the **arithmetic**. It would take at least six months to save enough money. Then she had an idea. She cut off all of her hair and sold it.

Meanwhile, Joe knew that he could never fix his watch. So he **polished** it and sold it. He made enough to buy the brush.

On their anniversary, the door **burst** open. Joe was excited to give Stella his gift.

But first, Stella gave him the money to fix the watch. When he saw his wife without any hair, he smiled. "I sold my watch to buy you something," Joe said. He gave her the brush, and she laughed. They were both willing to give up something very special to make each other happy.



## کادوی سالگرد ازدواج

جو نجار بود. در مناطق کوهستانی خانه می‌ساخت. همسر جو، استلا از یک سوزن و نخ برای دوختن لباس‌های شیک و ظریف استفاده می‌کرد. فقط از پارچهٔ زیبا برای درست کردن لباس استفاده می‌کرد. برای اینکه پول زیادی نداشتند، در یک آلونک قدیمی زندگی می‌کردند. وقتی باران می‌آمد آب داخل می‌چکید.

به جای مبل، صندلی‌هایی شکسته داشتند. اما برای تولید گرما زغال سنگ داشتند و برای نان آرد از آسیاب داشتند. با هم، بوته‌ها را پیرایش می‌کردند تا خانهٔ شان زیبا شود. جو و استلا فقیر بودند اما شرمسار نبودند. آنها خوشبخت بودند.

برخی اوقات شب، پیاده به مرکز شهر می‌رفتند. به پنجره‌های فروشگاه نگاه می‌کردند و رویا پردازی می‌کردند. استلا یک شانهٔ مو با دستهٔ عاجکاری شده می‌خواست. او هر روز موی سر خود را رو به بالا می‌کشید چون شانه‌ای نداشت تا موهایش را زیبا کند.

جو می‌خواست ساعت مچی پدربزرگش را تعمیر کند. برای سالگرد ازدواجشان، استلا می‌خواست چیزی که جو می‌خواست را برایش بگیرد. ولی بعد او حساب کتاب کرد. حداقل شش ماه طول می‌کشید تا پول کافی را بدست بیاورد. بعد فکری به سرش رسید.

تمام موهایش را کوتاه کرده و فروخت. در همین حین، جو می‌دانست که هرگز نمی‌تواند ساعتش را تعمیر کند. پس آن را برق انداخت و فروخت. به اندازهٔ کافی پول بدست آورد تا شانه را بخرد. در سالگرد ازدواجشان، در با ضربه باز شد. جو هیجان زده بود که هدیهٔ استلا را بدهد.

ولی اول استلا پول تعمیر ساعت را به او داد. وقتی که جو همسرش را بدون مو دید لبخند زد. جو گفت: "من ساعت رو فروختم تا چیزی برات بخرم." جو شانه را به او داد، و او خندید. هر دو برای خوشحال کردن یکدیگر حاضر بودند از چیزی خاص دست بکشند.



# Reading Comprehension

8

## PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Stella and Joe were ashamed of themselves.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ Joe was a carpenter.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ Stella and Joe were too poor to heat their shed with coal.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ Joe asked Stella to trim the bushes.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ Stella used a needle and thread to sew elegant things with beautiful fabric.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ Water dripped into their house.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## PART B Answer the questions.

1. Where were the houses that Joe worked on?
  - a. Near the mill
  - b. In the shed
  - c. On an elegant street
  - d. In the highlands
2. What did Joe do with his watch?
  - a. Hit it with his hammer
  - b. Lifted it upward to see it
  - c. Left it in the shed
  - d. Polished it and sold it
3. What did Stella make?
  - a. Elegant clothing
  - b. Ivory hairbrushes
  - c. Couches
  - d. Anything for herself
4. What did Stella do for Joe on their anniversary?
  - a. Sold her hair
  - b. Combed her hair
  - c. Made him a shirt
  - d. Bought him a gold watch





v.

ail

[eɪl]

پریشان کردن، رنجور کردن، سبب درد بودن



- ❖ To ail a person or group is to cause difficulty or pain.
- My brother went to the doctor to see what was ailing him.
- برادرم به دکتر رفت تا بفهمد چه چیزی او را ناخوش کرده است.

n.

ally

['ælaɪ]

دوست، متحد، هم پیمان



- ❖ An ally is someone who agrees to help or support you.
- I was happy to find many allies who shared the same opinion as me.
- از اینکه متحدان زیادی را پیدا کردم که با من هم عقیده بودند خوشحال بودم.

v.

boast

[bəʊst]

پزدادن، به رخ کشیدن



- ❖ To boast is to talk about how good you are.
- We all became tired of listening to him boast about himself all day.
- خسته شدیم از اینکه تمام روز به پُز دادن های او درباره خودش گوش دادیم.

v.

bounce

[baʊn(t)s]

جهیدن، به چیزی خوردن و برگشتن (مانند توپ یا...)



- ❖ To bounce is to move something up and away from a surface after hitting it.
- Owen bounced the ball on the ground.
- اُون توپ را به زمین زد.

n.

**bully**

['buli]

گردن کلفت، زورگو، قلدر



- ❖ A bully is a person who is mean to others.
- The two bullies always picked on the smaller, weaker kids.
- دو قلدر همیشه بچه‌های کوچک‌تر و ضعیف‌تر را اذیت می‌کردند.

n.

**carbohydrate** [kɑ:bə'haidreit]

کربوهیدرات



- ❖ carbohydrates are substances in foods like bread that give you energy.
- carbohydrates like rice are a good source of energy for active people.
- برای افراد فعال کربوهیدرات‌هایی مانند برنج منبع خوبی از انرژی هستند.

v.

**crawl**

[kro:l]

خزیدن، چهار دست و پا رفتن



- ❖ To crawl is to move slowly on your hands and knees.
- The baby crawled across the floor.
- نوزاد بر روی زمین چهار دست و پا رفت.

v.

**defeat**

[di'fi:t]

شکست دادن



- ❖ To defeat someone is to beat them in a game or battle.
- The champion defeated the challenger in the boxing match.
- در بازی بوکس قهرمان حریف را شکست داد.



n.

dial

['daɪəl]

صفحه ساعت



❖ A dial is the front of a clock.

➤ I looked at the dial to see what time it was.

➤ به صفحه نگاه کردم تا بدانم ساعت چند است.

adj.

dominant

['dɒmɪnənt]

چیره، مسلط، غالب، مقتدر



❖ When someone or something is dominant, they are stronger than others.

➤ The gorilla is one of the dominant animals in the jungle.

➤ گوریل یکی از حیوانات مقتدر در جنگل است.

n.

mercy

['mɜːsi]

بخشش، عفو، رحمت



❖ If you show mercy, you choose not to punish or harm someone.

➤ He asked his boss for mercy and to not fire him.

➤ او از رئیسش درخواست بخشش کرد و خواست او را اخراج نکند.

v.

nod

[nɒd]

سر تکان دادن، با سر اشاره کردن



❖ To nod is to move your head up and down.

➤ I nodded my head as I listened to the song.

➤ درحالیکه موسیقی گوش می‌دادم، سرم را تکام دادم.





n.

**opponent**

[ə'pəʊnənt]

رقیب، حریف

- ❖ An opponent is someone who fights against you.
- On the field, our opponents were too good for us.

➤ در زمین بازی، حریفان ما خیلی بهتر از ما بودند.



n.

**rival**

['raɪv(ə)l]

حریف، رقیب

- ❖ A rival is someone that is trying to keep you from getting what you want.
- The three rivals were all competing for the same job.

➤ آن سه رقیب، برای یک شغل یکسان رقابت می‌کردند.



adj.

**sore**

[sɔ:]

دردناک، درد دار

- ❖ When a part of your body is sore, it hurts.
- After lifting the heavy box, Mona's back was sore.

➤ بعد از بلند کردن جعبه سنگین، کمر مونا درد گرفت.



v.

**sting**

[stɪŋ]

گزیدن، نیش زدن، به سوزش آوردن

- ❖ To sting is to cause pain by pushing a sharp part into the skin.
- The needle stung my arm and made me say, "Ouch!"

➤ نوک سوزن دستم را سوزاند و گفتم، "آخ"



v.

**strain**

[streɪn]

تقلا کردن، تلاش کردن، کوشیدن

❖ To strain is to try very hard.

➤ Casey strained to lift the heavy box.

➤ کیسی تقلا کرد تا جعبه سنگین را بلند کند.



n.

**torture**

['tɔ:tʃə]

عذاب، رنج، شکنجه

❖ torture is something that causes you physical or mental pain.

➤ Greg thought that writing the essay was torture.

➤ گِریگ فکر می‌کرد که نوشتن مقاله عذاب است.



v.

**wrestle**

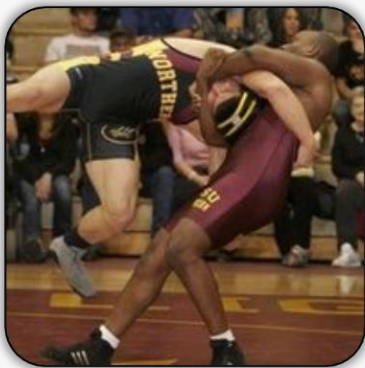
['resl]

کشتی گرفتن

❖ To wrestle is to play a game where you try to push someone to the floor.

➤ My dad loved to wrestle when he was in high school.

➤ وقتی پدرم به دبیرستان می‌رفت عاشق کشتی گرفتن بود.



v.

**quarrel**

['kwɔr(ə)]

دعوا کردن، مراغه کردن، بگو مگو کردن

❖ To quarrel is to argue or fight.

➤ Billy quarreled with his wife about buying a new house.

➤ بیلی بر سر خرید خانه جدید با همسرش دعوا کرد.



# Exercise 1

## PART A Choose the word for the given definition.

- someone who helps you  
a. bully                      b. ally                      c. bounce                      d. quarrel
- to move your head up and down  
a. wrestle                      b. strain                      c. nod                      d. defeat
- to move on your hands and knees  
a. crawl                      b. boast                      c. torture                      d. mercy
- to move something up and away after hitting it  
a. sore                      b. sting                      c. defeat                      d. bounce
- to cause difficulty or pain  
a. rival                      b. ail                      c. whistle                      d. carbohydrate

## PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- boast  
a. to go on your hands  
c. to move you head  
b. to be mean to people  
d. to talk about yourself
- dominant  
a. to be hurt  
c. stronger  
b. a friend  
d. a fight
- defeat  
a. to feel tired  
c. to beat  
b. to try hard  
d. a face
- mercy  
a. someone on the other side  
c. to not give punishment  
b. to push to the ground  
d. to feel terrible
- carbohydrate  
a. to win  
c. to cause an injury  
b. to move off of something  
d. food
- quarrel  
a. an argument  
c. to move your head  
b. a face of a clock  
d. to talk about yourself
- strain  
a. to try very hard  
c. stronger  
b. a friend  
d. to move something up and away
- rival  
a. to move the head up and down  
c. food  
b. to try hard  
d. one who keeps another from getting some
- wrestle  
a. someone on the other side  
c. to be hurt  
b. to push to the ground  
d. to feel terrible
- sore  
a. not giving another punishment  
c. to cause an injury  
b. to be hurt  
d. to move on the floor



Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Carol is always talking about how good she is to other people.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Jerry is a person who enjoys being mean to classmates.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Foods like bread and rice give you a lot of energy for an active lifestyle.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. We were all sad after our team was beaten in the game.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. I was caused pain by a sharp point as I was walking through the grass barefoot.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Look at the numbers on the clock face to see what time it is.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. If you can't speak, then move your head up and down for yes and no.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. The person who was fighting against me tried to catch me off guard.

\_\_\_\_\_

9. I tried very hard to lift the heavy boxes from the desk.

\_\_\_\_\_

10. Sitting through his long, boring speech was a horrible mental pain.

\_\_\_\_\_

# Dalton vs. the Bully

Dalton was a nice boy, but sometimes the other boys made fun of him because he was so tall and skinny. Dalton's biggest problem was Mitch. He was a **bully** who **boasted** about his strength. He **quarreled** with the other boys. Sometimes, if boys gave Mitch their lunch money, he would have **mercy** and leave them alone.

One day, the boys learned about a special Middle School Olympics. Their gym class was going to be in it. Many kids were excited. But Dalton thought it sounded like **torture**.

That morning, Dalton ate plenty of **carbohydrates** for breakfast. He entered the gym and looked at the **dial** on the clock. It was time to begin. The teacher asked if they were ready. Everyone **nodded**, except Dalton.

"I got **stung** by a bee. I need to see the nurse." said Dalton. He made it up so he wouldn't have to play.

"I don't believe you. Get ready to play," responded the coach.

First, they **wrestled**. Then they jumped, **crawled** and played other games. But Mitch was **dominant** in every event.

They **strained** all morning to **defeat** him. By lunch, they were **sore**. Their entire bodies **ailed** them. They thought about how to win. They knew the last game of the day was volleyball. Kids who used to be Dalton's **rivals** became his **allies**. They wanted him to help them beat Mitch. Dalton was going to be Mitch's **opponent**.

The game started. Every time Mitch tried to hit the ball over the net, Dalton stopped it. Finally, Mitch used all of his strength. But the ball **bounced** off Dalton's hands and back into Mitch's face! Finally Mitch was defeated.



## دالتون در مقابل قلدر

دالتون پسر خوبی بود، اما گاهی اوقات دیگر پسرها او را مسخره می‌کردند زیرا او خیلی قد بلند و لاغر بود. بزرگترین مشکل دالتون میچ بود. او یک زورگو بود که درباره قدرتش بلف می‌زد. او با دیگر پسرها دعوا می‌کرد.

برخی اوقات، اگر پسرها پول نهار خود را به میچ می‌دادند، به آنها رحم می‌کرد و آنها را رها می‌کرد. یک روز، پسرها از المپیک مدارس راهنمایی ویژه با خبر شدند. کلاس ورزش آنها قرار بود که در آن شرکت کنند. بسیاری از بچه‌ها هیجان زده بودند. اما دالتون فکر می‌کرد همانند شکنجه می‌ماند.

آن روز صبح، دالتون کربوهیدرات زیادی برای صبحانه خورد. وارد باشگاه شد و به صفحه ساعت دیواری نگاه کرد. زمان شروع بود. معلم پرسید که حاضر هستید یا خیر. همه سر تکان داد، به جز دالتون. دالتون گفت: "زنبور نیشم زده. باید پرستار را ببینم."

او این را از خودش در آورد که مجبور نباشد بازی کند. مربی جواب داد: "باورت نمی‌کنم. آماده شو که بازی کنی." آنها ابتدا کشتی گرفتند. بعد پریدند، سینه خیز رفتند و دیگر بازی‌ها را انجام دادند. اما میچ در تمام رویدادها پیروز بود.

آنها تمام صبح را تلاش کردند که او را شکست دهند. زمان نهار، خسته و کوفته بودند. کل بدن‌های آنها درد داشت. آنها به اینکه چطور برنده شوند فکر کردند. می‌دانستند که آخرین بازی آن روز والیبال است. بچه‌هایی که رقیب دالتون بودند به متحد او تبدیل شدند. آنها می‌خواستند که دالتون در شکست میچ به آنها کمک کند. دالتون قرار بود رقیب میچ باشد.

بازی شروع شد. هر دفعه که میچ سعی می‌کرد توپ را از بالای تور رد کند، دالتون جلوی آن را می‌گرفت. سرانجام، میچ از تمام قدرتش استفاده کرد. اما توپ به داستان دالتون برخورد کرد و برگشت و به صورت میچ خورد. بالاخره، میچ شکست داده شد.



# Reading Comprehension

9

## PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Mitch was a bully.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ Everyone was nice to Dalton.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ Dalton became ailed when a bee stung him.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ Dalton's biggest problem was being tall.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ When they wrestled, Mitch was dominant.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ The boys felt sore at lunchtime.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## PART B Answer the questions.

1. Which of the following was NOT part of their Olympics?
  - a. Wrestling
  - b. Volleyball
  - c. Crawling
  - d. Speed skating
2. What did boys give Mitch so he would have mercy on them?
  - a. A dial
  - b. Money
  - c. A whistle
  - d. Carbohydrates
3. Where did the Olympics happen?
  - a. In the gym
  - b. At the bully's school
  - c. At their rival's field
  - d. At Dalton's house
4. What did the boys want to do to Mitch?
  - a. Be his opponent
  - b. Show him mercy
  - c. Defeat him
  - d. Strain against him



n.

**absence**

[ˈæbs(ə)n(t)s]

نبود، غیاب، غیبت

- ❖ absence is the state of something being away.
- There is an absence of sand in the hourglass.

➤ شن در ساعت شنی وجود ندارد.



adv.

**aloud**

[əˈlaʊd]

(با صدای) بلند

- ❖ If you say something aloud, you say it so that others can hear you.
  - My father often reads stories aloud to me and my sister.
- پدرم اغلب برای من و خواهرم با صدای بلند داستان می‌خواند.



adj.

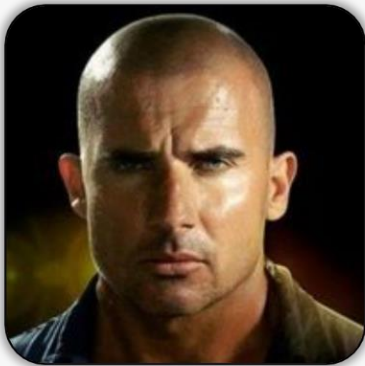
**bald**

[bɔːld]

طاس، کچل

- ❖ If someone is bald, they have no hair.
- My oldest brother is bald.

➤ بزرگ‌ترین برادرم کچل است.



n.

**blanket**

[ˈblæŋkɪt]

پتو، روانداز، روکش

- ❖ A blanket is a piece of cloth that you use to keep warm or to sit upon.
- I laid a blanket on the ground so that we could have a picnic.

➤ رواندازی بر روی زمین پهن کردم تا بتوانیم تفریح داشته باشیم..





v.

**creep**

[kri:p]

دزدکی رد شدن، مخفیانه وارد شدن

❖ To creep is to move quietly and slowly.

➤ The cat slowly crept down the tree.

➤ گربه به آرامی از درخت پایین آمد.



n.

**divorce**

[di'vɔ:s]

طلاق

❖ divorce is an event in which a marriage is ended.

➤ divorce rates have increased in the past twenty years.

➤ نرخ طلاق در بیست سال گذشته افزایش یافته است.



v.

**imitate**

['imiteit]

تقلید کردن

❖ To imitate someone is to do exactly what they do.

➤ He imitated his favorite superhero by putting on a costume.

➤ با پوشیدن لباس مبدل از ابرقهرمان مورد علاقه‌اش تقلید کرد.



n.

**infant**

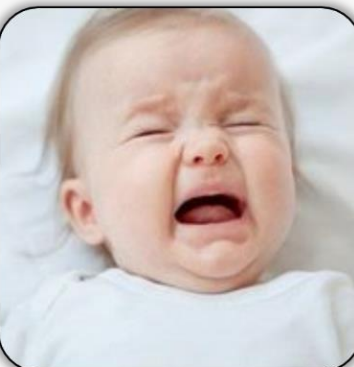
['ɪnfənt]

نوزاد

❖ An infant is a baby.

➤ The infant cried all night.

➤ نوزاد کل شب را گریه کرد.





v.

**kidnap**

['kɪdnæp]

آدم ربایی کردن



- ❖ To kidnap someone is to take them illegally.
- She was terrified to find out her son was kidnapped.
- وقتی فهمید پسرش دزدیده شده است وحشت کرد.

n.

**nap**

[næp]

چرت



- ❖ A nap is a short sleep, usually during the day.
- I took a short nap because I stayed up late last night.
- چرت کوتاهی زدم چون دیشب تا دیر وقت بیدار ماندم.

adv.

**nowhere**

['nəʊweə]

هیچ جا، هیچ کجا



- ❖ You use nowhere to say that a place or thing does not exist.
- Unfortunately, water was nowhere to be found.
- متأسفانه، آب در هیچ جا پیدا نشد.

v.

**pat**

[pæt]

دست کشیدن (آرام با کف دست)، نوازش کردن



- ❖ To pat something is to hit it softly with your hand.
- I patted some lotion onto my face.
- مقداری لوسیون به صورتم مالیدم.



n.

**relief**

[rɪ'li:f]

آرامش، تسکین



❖ relief is a feeling you get when something bad or challenging ends.

➤ I felt a sense of relief when I heard the good news.

➤ وقتی خبر خوب را شنیدم احساس آرامش خاطر کردم.

v.

**reproduce**

[ri:prə'dju:s]

دوباره ساختن، تکثیر کردن



❖ To reproduce is to make something exactly how someone else did it.

➤ The children tried to reproduce their house using toy blocks.

➤ بچه‌ها سعی کردند با استفاده از بلوک‌های اسباب بازی خانه‌یشان را دوباره بسازند.

v.

**rhyme**

[raɪm]

شعر (قافیه‌دار)



❖ To rhyme is to have the same sounds at the end of a word.

➤ Humpty Dumpty is an old rhyme that children learn in school.

➤ هامپی دامپی یک شعر قدیمی است که بچه‌ها در مدرسه یاد می‌گیرند.

v.

**suck**

[sʌk]

مکیدن، مک زدن



❖ To suck is to put something in your mouth and try to get flavor out of it.

➤ The baby sucked milk from her bottle.

➤ کودک شیر را از شیشه‌اش مکید.



adj.

**urgent**

[ˈɜːdʒ(ə)nt]

ضروری، اضطراری



❖ If something is urgent, it is important and needs to be done now.

➤ He had to leave now; it was urgent.

➤ او باید همین حالا می‌رفت؛ اضطراری بود.

v.

**vanish**

[ˈvæniʃ]

ناپدید شدن



❖ To vanish is to go away suddenly.

➤ All the passengers vanished from the train station.

➤ همه مسافران از ایستگاه قطار ناپدید شدند.

n.

**wagon**

[ˈwæɡən]

ارابه، گاری، بارکش



❖ A wagon is a cart you use to carry heavy things.

➤ He used his wagon to carry some of his gifts.

➤ او برای حمل بعضی هدایای خود از ارابه کوچکش استفاده کرد.

n.

**wrinkle**

[ˈrɪŋkl]

چین، چین و چروک



❖ A wrinkle is a line on a person's face that happens as they get old.

➤ My grandfather has some wrinkles on his face.

➤ پدربزرگ من چروک‌هایی بر روی صورتش دارد.



## Exercise 1

Choose the right word for the given definition.

- not having any hair  
a. bald                      b. urgent                      c. absence                      d. nowhere
- a good feeling when something bad goes away  
a. divorce                      b. pat                      c. roar                      d. relief
- to put something in your mouth and get flavor from it  
a. wrinkle                      b. suck                      c. rhyme                      d. nap
- to act like someone else  
a. suck                      b. aloud                      c. creep                      d. imitate
- to go away suddenly  
a. blanket                      b. kidnap                      c. vanish                      d. reproduce

## Exercise 2

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

- What is it called when you don't have something?  
a. A nap                      b. An absence                      c. A divorce                      d. A pat
- This is another name for a baby.  
a. Vanish                      b. Suck                      c. Creep                      d. Infant
- What could you use to carry wood?  
a. A wagon                      b. An infant                      c. A wrinkle                      d. A blanket
- Which of the following actions is a crime?  
a. To rhyme                      b. To kidnap                      c. To reproduce                      d. To pat
- What is the following an example of: "The cat and bat sat in a hat"?  
a. Bald                      b. Urgent                      c. Aloud                      d. Rhyme
- Which of the following could be urgent?  
a. A soccer game                      b. An emergency phone call  
c. A trip to the park                      d. A birthday party
- What happens when a couple gets divorced?  
a. They vanish.                      b. They're not married anymore.  
c. Their pets are taken away.                      d. They copy others.
- How would you creep?  
a. Angrily                      b. Loudly                      c. Quickly                      d. Slowly
- Which of the following would you pat?  
a. A fish                      b. A sock                      c. A dog                      d. A table
- What could come from nowhere?  
a. An idea                      b. A day                      c. A house                      d. A new year

**Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.**

1. aloud / nowhere

I asked my mom \_\_\_\_\_ where she was going. She told me she was going \_\_\_\_\_.

2. infant / wrinkles

The \_\_\_\_\_ has perfect skin without any scars or \_\_\_\_\_.

3. absence / divorced

After my parents got \_\_\_\_\_, I was sad about my dad's \_\_\_\_\_ around the house.

4. urgent / reproduce

My boss asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ the image for her customers. She said it was very \_\_\_\_\_.

5. sucked / patted

After I fell, I \_\_\_\_\_ on my finger where I cut it. Then my mom \_\_\_\_\_ me on the back and told me to get up.

6. bald / rhymes

The \_\_\_\_\_ man on television entertained viewers by saying \_\_\_\_\_.

7. crept / vanished

Manuel's mom thought he had \_\_\_\_\_, but in reality he had just \_\_\_\_\_ under his bed.

8. wagon / kidnap

I was scared when my big sister left me in the \_\_\_\_\_. I was afraid someone would \_\_\_\_\_ me.

9. nap / relief

It was such a \_\_\_\_\_ to be finished with the long exam. I was so tired afterward that I needed to take a \_\_\_\_\_.

10. imitating / blanket

Nellie wrapped a \_\_\_\_\_ around her and made funny sounds. She was \_\_\_\_\_ a ghost.



# Anna the Babysitter

Since her parents got a **divorce**, Anna has had to help her mother. In her mother's **absence**, Anna takes care of Grace, the baby. At first, Anna thought it was an easy job.

One afternoon, Anna played with Grace. She meowed like a cat and Grace **imitated** her. In fact, Grace **reproduced** every sound that Anna made. She took her sister outside. She put Grace in the **wagon**, but there was **nowhere** for them to go. So they went back inside.

Anna put the **infant** on the floor and went into her room. But when she came back, Grace had **vanished!** Anna looked everywhere, but she could not find her sister. Maybe the baby had been **kidnapped!** "Where are you?" Anna called **aloud**.

The situation was becoming **urgent**. She wanted to call her mom, but she didn't want her to think Anna couldn't do the job. Anna sat down. What was she going to do?

But then, Anna heard something. It was coming from her room. "Grace?" She got down on her knees and looked under the bed. She could see Grace's **bald** head. Grace had followed Anna into her room and **crept** under the bed.

"What a **relief!**" Anna cried.

She picked up her sister and **patted** her on the head. Her head was soft and had no **wrinkles**. Grace was **sucking** on her thumb and looked tired. So, Anna wrapped her in a **blanket** and sang **rhymes** for her. Then she put Grace in bed for a **nap**.

After that afternoon, Anna knew that taking care of Grace was not an easy job. It takes a lot of work to take care of a baby!





## آنا پرستار بچه

چون پدر مادرش طلاق گرفته بودند آنا مجبور بوده است که به مادرش کمک کند. آنا در غیاب مادر خود، از گریس، نوزاد خانه، مراقبت می‌کرد. اوایل، آنا فکر کرد که کار راحتی است.

یک روز بعد از ظهر، آنا با گریس بازی کرد. مانند یک گربه میو میو کرد و گریس کار او را تقلید کرد. در حقیقت، گریس هر صدایی که آنا در میاورد را بازتولید می‌کرد. او خواهر خود را بیرون برد. گریس را داخل کالسکه بچه گذاشت، اما جایی برای آنها نبود که بروند. بنابراین آنها به داخل خانه برگشتند.

آنا نوزاد را روی زمین گذاشت و رفت داخل اتاق خود. ولی وقتی که او برگشت گریس غیبت زده بود. آنا همه جا را نگاه کرد، اما او نتوانست خواهرش را پیدا کند. شاید کودک دزدیده شده بود. آنا بلند صدا زد: "کجایی؟"

موقعیت داشت اضطراری می‌شد. می‌خواست به مادرش زنگ بزند، اما نمی‌خواست که مادرش فکر کند او نمی‌تواند از پس کار بر بیاید. آنا نشست. چه کار باید می‌کرد؟

اما در آن زمان، آنا صدای چیزی را شنید. آن صدا از اتاق او می‌آمد. "گریس؟" او روی زانوهای خود نشست و زیر تخت را نگاه کرد. او می‌توانست کله موی گریس را ببیند. گریس آنا را تا داخل اتاقش دنبال کرده بود و خزیده بود زیر تخت. آنا داد زد: "خیالم راحت شد"

خواهرش را بلند کرد و سرش را نوازش کرد. سرش نرم و بدون چین و چروک بود. گریس در حال مکیدن انگشت شست خود بود و خسته به نظر می‌رسید. بنابراین، آنا او را در پتویی پیچید و برایش شعر خواند. (آواز خواند) سپس گریس را برای چرت در تخت خواب گذاشت. بعد از بعد از ظهر، آنا می‌دانست مراقبت کردن از گریس کار راحتی نبود.

نگهداری از یک کودک کار زیادی می‌برد.

**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Anna took care of Grace in her mother's absence because her parents got a divorce.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_ Grace had a lot of hair and wrinkles.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_ Anna imitated a cat, and Grace reproduced the sounds she made.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_ Anna had nowhere to go with the wagon.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_ When Anna came back from her room, she found that the infant had been kidnapped.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. \_\_\_ Anna sang rhymes for Grace to try to find her more quickly.

\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. What did Anna feel when she finally found Grace?

- a. Sleepy
- b. Urgent
- c. Relief
- d. Pleasant

2. How did Grace get under the bed?

- a. She crept there.
- b. Anna put her there for her nap.
- c. She was kidnapped.
- d. Anna carried her in the blanket.

3. Which is NOT something Anna did with Grace?

- a. Go outside in the wagon
- b. Pat her on the head
- c. Read a book aloud
- d. Sing her rhymes

4. Why did Anna wrap Grace in a blanket?

- a. So she would not cry
- b. So she could pat her
- c. So she could take a nap
- d. To keep her from sucking her thumb

adj.

**abnormal**

[æb'no:ɹm(ə)]

غیرعادی، غیر طبیعی

- ❖ If something is abnormal, it is strange or not normal.
- Her idea of art is a bit too abnormal for me.

➤ ایده او درباره هنر از نظر من خیلی غیرعادی است.

n.

**bamboo**

[bæm'bu:]

بامبو

- ❖ bamboo is a hard plant with thin branches and leaves.
- Outside his home, there is a lot of bamboo.

➤ بیرون خانه اش، درختان بامبوی زیادی وجود دارد.

n.

**blossom**

['blɒsəm]

شکوفه، گل

- ❖ A blossom is a flower or group of flowers.
- There were colorful blossoms in the yard.

➤ شکوفه های رنگارنگ در حیاط وجود داشتند.

n.

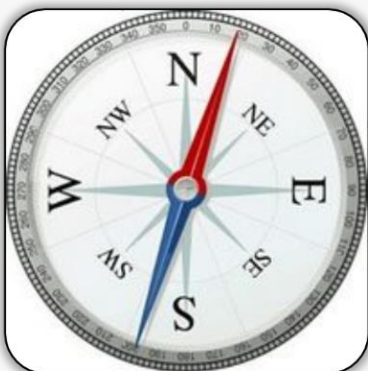
**compass**

['kʌmpəs]

قطب نما

- ❖ A compass is a device used to tell what direction one is going.
- A compass is an important tool to have when you are travelling.

➤ وقتی به سفر می روید قطب نما ابزاریست که داشتنش مهم است.





n.

dialect

['daɪələkt]

گویش، لهجه، زبان محلی



- ❖ A dialect is a regional variety of language showing where you are from.
- People from U.K. have a different dialect of English from those in the U.S.A.
- گویش انگلیسی مردم بریتانیا متفاوت از گویش مردم آمریکا است.

adj.

dishonest

[dɪs'ɒnɪst]

ناصاذق، متقلب، فریبکار



- ❖ If someone is dishonest, they do not tell the truth.
- She was being dishonest when she copied the answers from his test.
- او با کپی کردن جوابها از برگه دیگری، فریبکاری کرد.

n.

dwarf

[dwɔ:f]

کوتوله



- ❖ A dwarf is a creature from stories that often looks like a short, hairy man.
- The dwarf had a pleasant look on his face.
- کوتوله ظاهر خوشایندی بر روی صورتش داشت.

n.

ecosystem

[i:kəʊ'sɪstəm]

اکوسیستم



- ❖ An ecosystem is a group of plants and animals in an area.
- The river's ecosystem not only includes fish but other insects and plants.
- اکوسیستم رودخانه نه تنها ماهی بلکه شامل حشرات و گیاهان دیگر نیز می شود.



adj.

**fatal**

['feit(ə)]

کشنده، مرگبار، مهلک

- ❖ If something is fatal, it causes death.
- They passed away in a fatal car crash.

➤ آنها در تصادف مرگبار ماشین مردند.



adj.

**impatient**

[im'peɪ](ə)nt]

بی‌صبر، عجل، بی‌حوصله

- ❖ If someone is impatient, they are not able to wait for things.
- Bob was so impatient that he could barely wait for the light to turn green.

➤ باب آنقدر بی‌صبر بود که به سختی توانست برای سبز شدن چراغ صبر کند.



n.

**leaf**

[li:f]

برگ

- ❖ A leaf is the flat green thing on trees or bushes.
- In the fall, the leaves on the trees change colors.

➤ در پاییز، رنگ برگ درختان عوض می‌شود.



n.

**manuscript**

['mænjəskript, mænjuskrɪpt]

دست‌نویسته، کتاب خطی، نسخه‌ی خطی

- ❖ A manuscript is an old book or paper written by hand.
- The manuscript was written over 150 years ago.

➤ آن نسخه‌ی خطی بیش از 150 سال پیش نوشته شده است.



n.

marsh

[mɑ:ʃ]

مرداب



- ❖ A marsh is a type of wet land covered with grasses and short plants.
- The marsh looked so lovely against the mountains.

➤ مرداب در کنار کوه بسیار زیبا به نظر می‌آمد.

n.

patience

['peɪʃ(ə)n(t)s]

صبر، شکیبایی



- ❖ patience is the ability to wait for something without becoming upset.
- Sue's patience was rewarded by catching her very first fish.

➤ شکیبایی سو، با گرفتن اولین ماهی‌اش به ثمر رسید.

n.

perfume

['pɜ:fju:m]

عطر



- ❖ perfume is a good-smelling liquid that girls wear.
- When she wore her perfume, everyone said she smelled great.

➤ وقتی به خود عطر زد، همه به او گفتند بوی خوبی می‌دهد.

n.

pond

[pɒnd]

تالاب، برکه، حوضچه



- ❖ A pond is a very small area of water.

➤ The ducks swam in the pond.

➤ اردک‌ها در برکه شنا کردند.



n.

**proverb**

['prɒvɜ:b]

ضرب‌المثل، مَثَل

- ❖ A proverb is a short saying that tells you something important.
- The proverb "egg on your face" means you've done something embarrassing.
- ضرب‌المثل "سکه یک پول شدن" یعنی شما کار خجالت‌آوری کرده‌اید.



n.

**pursuit**

[pə'sju:t]

جستجو، تعقیب

- ❖ A pursuit is a chase.
- The dinosaur was in pursuit of the caveman.
- دایناسور غارنشین را دنبال کرد.



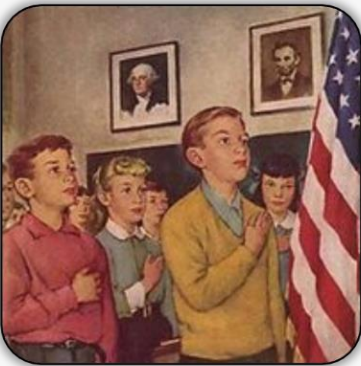
v.

**recite**

[rɪ'saɪt]

بازگوکردن، از بر خواندن

- ❖ To recite something means to repeat or say aloud in front of a group.
- Katie recited the Pledge of Allegiance in class.
- کتی تعهد وفاداری را در کلاس از بر خواند.



n.

**wilderness**

['wɪldənəs]

بیابان، برهوت، سرزمین دست نخورده

- ❖ A wilderness is an area where no people live.
- If you are not careful, you can get lost in the wilderness.
- اگر دقت نکنید، ممکن است در آن برهوت گم شوید.



## Exercise 1

### PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to speak openly  
a. abnormal      b. compass      c. recite      d. pursuit
- capable of causing death  
a. wilderness      b. fatal      c. impatient      d. blossom
- a group of living things  
a. ecosystem      b. manuscript      c. dwarf      d. bamboo
- the ability to wait without getting upset  
a. proverb      b. marsh      c. patience      d. abnormal
- a very short character in stories  
a. leaf      b. dialect      c. recite      d. dwarf

### PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- manuscript  
a. grass with thin branches      b. an area not settled by people  
c. being able to wait      d. an old book
- proverb  
a. a short saying      b. a device used to tell direction  
c. a small area of water      d. to say something aloud
- pursuit  
a. a chase      b. not normal      c. a book      d. speaking
- dialect  
a. can cause death      b. a different way of speaking  
c. a flat green thing      d. a creature from stories
- marsh  
a. flowers      b. wet land      c. lies      d. living things

## Exercise 2

### Choose the answer that best fits the question.

- What would you call some place where no one lives?  
a. Fatal      b. Abnormal      c. Wilderness      d. Dishonest
- Where would you most likely find a fish?  
a. In a pond      b. On a leaf      c. In the wilderness      d. On some bamboo
- People use flowers to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. be a dwarf      b. make perfume      c. recite a song      d. read a manuscript
- What would someone sailing in the ocean use to know which way they were going?  
a. An ecosystem      b. Patience      c. A dialect      d. A compass
- Which of the following is a part of a plant?  
a. A blossom      b. A marsh      c. A proverb      d. A pursuit

**Choose the word that is a better fit for each blank.**

1. ecosystem / pond

Frogs are an important part of the \_\_\_\_\_, especially around a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.

2. dialect / recited

When he \_\_\_\_\_ the poem in front the class, they could not understand him because he spoke with a different \_\_\_\_\_.

3. abnormal / dwarf

They had never seen anything as \_\_\_\_\_ as this creature. It looked and dressed like a man, but the \_\_\_\_\_ was short and had a long nose.

4. impatient / manuscript

The \_\_\_\_\_ was so old that the words were hard to read. Though she tried to read it, she soon became \_\_\_\_\_ and put the old book away.

5. patience / proverbs

Many \_\_\_\_\_ try to teach lessons about human qualities such as honesty and \_\_\_\_\_.

6. marsh / pursuit

The \_\_\_\_\_ through the \_\_\_\_\_ was very difficult because the ground was too wet to stand on.

7. blossom / perfume

She crushed the \_\_\_\_\_ and mixed it with some water so she could make the \_\_\_\_\_.

8. dishonest / fatal

The label on the bottle was \_\_\_\_\_. It said that the powder didn't hurt children when it was actually \_\_\_\_\_ for them to consume.

9. bamboo / leaves

The \_\_\_\_\_ that grow on the \_\_\_\_\_ are thick and hard to chew.

10. compass / wilderness

Because it is easy to lose your way in the \_\_\_\_\_, it's a good idea to bring a \_\_\_\_\_ with you.



# Peter and the Dwarf

Peter was a hunter. One day, he was in **pursuit** of a deer and became lost. He usually carried a **compass** with him when he went into the **wilderness**, but that day he left it at home.

As he walked, the forest began to look different. He didn't see any **bamboo**. Instead, there were bushes with long **leaves**. The **ecosystem** was now very **abnormal**. Peter knew he was in the Magic **Marsh**.

Now he was tired and thirsty. He was afraid. Being lost in the marsh could be **fatal**. When people entered it, they never came out.

At last, he found a **pond**. Flowers grew around it. The **blossoms** smelled like the best **perfume**. He felt relaxed so he drank some water and fell asleep. When he awoke, he saw an evil **dwarf** staring at him.

"What are you doing here?" it asked. The dwarf spoke in a strange **dialect**.

"I'm lost," said Peter. "Can you help me?"

"Yes," it said, but Peter didn't know it was **dishonest**.

The dwarf took an old **manuscript** from his pocket. It was a magic map. "Just **recite** the words at the bottom," the dwarf explained. "It will show you how to get home."

"Good," Peter said. He was **impatient** and quickly grabbed the map.

He recited the magic words, and a line appeared on the map. He walked for many days but never left the marsh. Finally, the map led him back to the pond. He walked in a circle!

The dwarf was still there. "Here's a **proverb** for you to think about," it said, "When **patience** is lost, then so are you."



## پیتر و کتوله

پیتر شکارچی بود. یک روز، دنبال آهوئی بود و او گم شد. معمولا یک قطب نما با خود داشت وقتی که به حیت وحش می‌رفت، اما آن روز آن را در خانه جا گذاشت. همینطور که داشت راه می‌رفت، جنگل شروع به متفاوت به نظر رسیدن کرد. او هیچ بامبویی ندید.

به جای آن بوته‌هایی با برگ‌های بلند وجود داشت. اکوسیستم حالا خیلی غیرعادی بود. پیتر می‌دانست که در مرداب جادویی (مجیک مارش) بود. اکنون او خسته و تشنه بود. ترسیده بود. گم شدن در باتلاق می‌توانست کشنده باشد. وقتی مردم وارد آن می‌شدند، هرگز بیرون نمی‌آمدند.

در نهایت، یک برکه پیدا کرد. گل‌هایی دور تا دور آن رشد کرده بود. بوی شکوفه‌ها مانند بودی بهترین عطر بود. احساس آرامش کرد بنابراین کمی آب نوشید و خوابید. وقتی بیدار شد، کوتوله‌ای شیطانی که به او زل زده بود را دید.

کتوله پرسید: " اینجا چکار می‌کنی؟" کوتوله با لهجای عجیب صحبت کرد. پیتر گفت: "گم شدم، می‌تونی بهم کمک کنی؟". او گفت: "بله". ولی پیتر نمی‌دانست که او فریبکار بود.

کوتوله دست نوشته‌ای قدیمی از جیب خود بیرون آورد. نقشه‌ای جادویی بود. کوتوله توضیح داد: " فقط کلمه‌های پایین را بازگو کن. به تو نشان خواهد داد چطور به خانه برسی" پیتر گفت: "خوبه".

عجول بود و سریع نقشه را قاپید (گرفت). کلمات جادویی را بازگو کرد و یک خط روی نقشه ظاهر شد. چندین روز راه رفت اما هرگز باتلاق را ترک نکرد. بالاخره، نقشه او را به برگشت به برکه هدایت کرد. او یک دایره را راه رفته بود! (دور خودش چرخیده بود) کوتوله هنوز آنجا بود. گفت: یک ضرب‌المثل برات دارم که بهش فکر کنی: " وقتی صبرت رو گم کنی، خودت هم گم شدی".



**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Peter left his compass at home.

---

2. \_\_\_ When people entered the Magic Marsh, they always came out.

---

3. \_\_\_ Peter ate some flowers and fell asleep.

---

4. \_\_\_ The dwarf spoke with a strange dialect.

---

5. \_\_\_ Peter knew the dwarf was dishonest.

---

6. \_\_\_ The map led Peter back to the pond.

---

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. Why was Peter in the wilderness?

- a. He was in pursuit of a deer.
- b. He was weak and hungry.
- c. He was looking for the Magic Marsh.
- d. He was lost.

2. How did Peter know he was in the Magic Marsh?

- a. There was a lot of bamboo.
- b. There were no leaves.
- c. The ecosystem was abnormal.
- d. He smelled blossoms.

3. What did the dwarf have that could help Peter escape the marsh?

- a. A bottle of perfume
- b. A magic manuscript
- c. A compass
- d. Patience

4. Why was Peter afraid of the Magic Marsh?

- a. He was impatient.
- b. Being lost there could be fatal.
- c. He was tired and thirsty.
- d. There was an evil dwarf in it.



v.

**anticipate** [æn'tɪsɪpeɪt]

منتظر بودن، پیش‌بینی کردن، توقع داشتن

- ❖ To anticipate something is to think that it will happen.
- Carrie anticipated the arrival of her baby.

➤ کری منتظر تولد نوزادش بود.

n.

**barrel** ['bær(ə)l]

بشکه

- ❖ A barrel is a round thing that you can keep liquids in.
- There was an empty barrel outside the house.

➤ یک بشکه خالی بیرون از خانه بود.

n.

**beam** [bi:m]

تیرچه، تیرآهن

- ❖ A beam is a heavy bar.
- Modern skyscrapers are made with several beams.

➤ آسمان خراش‌های مدرن از چند تیرآهن ساخته می‌شوند.

adj.

**casual** ['kæʒwəl]

غیررسمی، خودمانی

- ❖ If something is casual, it is relaxed or simple.
- You can wear casual clothes to the party like jeans.

➤ برای مهمانی می‌توانید لباس‌های غیر رسمی مثل جین بپوشید.

n.

**caution**

['kɔːʃ(ə)n]

احتیاط، ملاحظه



- ❖ caution is care and attention in order to avoid danger.
- Please use the power saw with caution. It is very dangerous.
- لطفاً با احتیاط از اره برقی استفاده کنید. خیلی خطرناک است.

n.

**contrary**

['kɒntr(ə)rɪ]

مخالف، مقابل



- ❖ If something is contrary to something else, it is the opposite.
- It isn't warm outside at all. On the contrary, it is quite cold.
- بیرون اصلاً هوا گرم نیست. برعکس، کاملاً سرد است.

adj.

**deliberate**

[dɪ'lɪb(ə)rɪt]

عمدی، آگاهانه، از قصد



- ❖ If you are deliberate, you do something on purpose.
- Bernie made a deliberate attempt to injure Andy.
- برنی از عمد تلاش کرد تا اندی را زخمی کند.

v.

**dissolve**

[dɪ'zɒlv]

حل شدن یا کردن



- ❖ To dissolve something is to mix it into a liquid and disappear.
- I dissolved the pill in a glass of water.
- قرص را در یک لیوان آب حل کردم.



v.

**explode**

[ɪk'spləʊd]

منفجر شدن



- ❖ When something explodes, it blows up.
- My new radio exploded when I plugged it in.

➤ وقتی رادیوی جدیدم را به برق زدم، منفجر شد.

v.

**fasten**

['fɑ:s(ə)n]

بستن



- ❖ To fasten something is to close it or put it in the correct place.
- Elizabeth fastened her seat belt.

➤ الیزابت کمربند ایمنی خود را بست.

n.

**germ**

[dʒɜ:m]

میکروب



- ❖ A germ is something that makes you sick.
- germs are on everything that you touch.

➤ میکروبها در هر جایی که به آن دست می‌زنید وجود دارند.

n.

**kit**

[kɪt]

بسته، کیت



- ❖ A kit is a set of all the things needed to do something.
- Is there a first aid kit in your office?

➤ آیا در دفتر کارتان جعبه کمک‌های اولیه دارید؟



n.

**puff**

[pʌf]

پک، وزش، فوت



- ❖ A puff is a little bit of smoke or steam.
- A puff of smoke came from the burnt match.

➤ دودی از کبریت سوخته بلند شد.

n.

**rag**

[ræg]

دستمال، تکه پارچه



- ❖ A rag is a small towel.
- Please use a rag to clean the dust off the table.

➤ لطفاً از یک تکه پارچه برای تمیزکردن گرد و خاک میز استفاده کنید.

v.

**scatter**

['skæɪtə]

پاشیدن، پراکندن



- ❖ To scatter something is to make it go in many places.
- I accidentally scattered all of my pills.

➤ تصادفی همه قرص‌هایم را روی زمین پاشیدم.

n.

**scent**

[sent]

بو، رایحه



- ❖ A scent is a smell.
- Julie enjoyed the scent of the flowers.

➤ جولی از عطر گل‌ها لذت برد.

n.

**steel**

[sti:l]

فولاد، استیل



❖ steel is a shiny gray metal.

➤ The new apartment building was made with steel.

➤ ساختمان آپارتمان جدید از استیل ساخته شده است.

adj.

**swift**

[swift]

سریع، چابک، تیزپا



❖ If something is swift, it is fast.

➤ The swift horse easily jumped over the hurdle.

➤ اسب تیزپا به آسانی از روی مانع پرید.

v.

**toss**

[tɒs]

پرتاب کردن، پرت کردن، بالا انداختن



❖ If you toss something, you throw it softly.

➤ He tossed a coin into the air.

➤ او سکه‌ای را به هوا پرتاب کرد.

n.

**triumph**

['traɪəmf]

پیروزی، موفقیت



❖ triumph is what you feel when you win or finish something.

➤ He raised the award in triumph at the end of his speech.

➤ در پایان سخنرانی‌اش جایزه را به نشانه موفقیت بالا برد.

# Exercise 1

## PART A Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. anticipate  
a. to win                      b. to wait for                      c. to blow up                      d. to go everywhere
2. kit  
a. something that makes you sick                      b. set of things needed to do something  
c. a round container                      d. to disappear in liquid
3. steel  
a. a large bar                      b. a small towel                      c. shiny metal                      d. a smell
4. contrary  
a. careful                      b. not fancy                      c. fast                      d. opposite
5. toss  
a. to throw                      b. small amount                      c. to be careful                      d. to lock down
6. triumph  
a. to win                      b. a round container  
c. to lock something in place                      d. careful
7. scatter  
a. something that makes you sick                      b. metal  
c. to expect something                      d. to go in many places
8. casual  
a. a large bar                      b. the opposite                      c. relaxed or simple                      d. smoke
9. rag  
a. careful                      b. a small towel                      c. on purpose                      d. to disappear in water
10. beam  
a. to throw                      b. small amount                      c. to smell                      d. a heavy metal bar

## PART B Choose the right word for the given definition.

1. a round container  
a. scent                      b. kit                      c. beam                      d. barrel
2. on purpose  
a. deliberate                      b. casual                      c. swift                      d. contrary
3. something that makes you sick  
a. puff                      b. rag                      c. germs                      d. triumph
4. to lock something in place  
a. anticipate                      b. fasten                      c. scatter                      d. explode
5. to mix in a liquid and disappear  
a. caution                      b. toss                      c. dissolve                      d. steel



Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. When the house burned, a large heavy bar fell from the ceiling.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Joshua smiled in great emotion and feeling after he got a good grade on his science test.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. She walked on the ice with care so she wouldn't fall.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. It was scary when the car blew up, but luckily no one was hurt.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. I used a small towel from the sink to clean up the milk I spilled.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The basketball player was fast and stole the ball.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. You can wear relaxed and simple clothes to the school.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. I really like the smell of this candle.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. My cat made her food go in many places.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. When we lit the fire, a little smoke came out of the chimney.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# The Ice Cream Cone Explosion

One day, John walked to his uncle's ice cream shop. When he reached the sidewalk, he caught the **scent** of ice cream cones and **anticipated** eating some ice cream.

Sam opened the door. Uncle John had a new, **steel** machine. "What is that?"

"It's a cone maker. I built it from a **kit**. You take flour from the **barrel** and put it in this pan," Uncle John said. "Then add water and sugar here and stir it so the sugar **dissolves**. Next, you **fasten** down the **beam**." Uncle John wanted to look **casual**, but he was excited. He made a few **swift** motions and turned it on. There was a **puff** of smoke, and then cones came out the other end.

"Is it hard to use? Sam asked.

"On the **contrary**. It's easy to use. Want to try?"

Sam washed his hands with **caution**. He made a **deliberate** attempt to keep **germs** out of the dough. Soon, Sam had his first cone. He smiled in **triumph!**

Uncle John tried to turn the machine off, but it just kept making cones. Sam and Uncle John put them on the counter, then on chairs. Before long, cones **scattered** all over the floor.

They tried everything to stop it, but it wouldn't stop! "What are we going to do?" he said.

"Kick it!" yelled Sam. Uncle John lifted his foot and gave the machine a kick. It made a funny noise and **exploded**. They were both covered with dough\*. Uncle John laughed when he knew Sam was OK. He **tossed** Sam a **rag** to clean his face and smiled. "I guess we have enough cones now!"



## انفجار قیف بستنی

یک روز، جان به مغازه بستنی فروشی عموی خود رفت. زمانی که به پیاده رو رسید، بوی قیف‌های بستنی به دماغش خورد و انتظار داشت مقداری بستنی بخورد. سم در را باز کرد. عمو جان یک ماشین جدید آهنی داشت. "اون چیه؟" "قیف سازه"

از روی یک کیت درستش کردم. عمو جان گفت: "از تو بشکه آرد در میاری و میزاریش توی این تابه." بعد آب و شکر رو اضافه می‌کنی و همش میزنی تا شکر حل بشه. بعد از اون، میله رو سفت می‌کنی. عمو جان می‌خواست که عادی به نظر برسه، ولی هیجان زده بود. چندتا حرکت سریع زد و روشنش کرد. پفی از دود درست شد و قیف‌ها از اونطرف بیرون اومدن.

سم پرسید: "استفاده کردن ازش سخته؟" برعکس. استفادهش آسونه. می‌خواهی امتحان کنی؟ سم با احتیاط دست‌های خود را شست. عمداً تلاش کرد تا میکروب‌ها را از خمیر دور نگه دارد. خیلی زود سم اولین قیف بستنی خود را داشت. با حسی از پیروزی لبخند زد.

عمو جان تلاش کرد تا دستگاه را خاموش کند ولی دستگاه به درست کردن قیف ادامه داد. سم و عمو جان آنها را روی پیشخوان قرار دادند، بعد روی صندلی‌ها. مدتی بعد، قیف‌ها همه جا روی زمین پخش شدند.

آنها هر کاری را امتحان کردند تا متوقفش کنند، اما متوف نمی‌شد! گفت: "چیکار بکنیم؟" سم فریاد زد: "بهش لگد بزن!" عمو جان پایش را بلند کرد و لگدی به دستگاه زد. دستگاه صدای جالبی تولید کرد و منفجر شد.

آنها هر دو پوشیده از خمیر شدند. عمو جان خندید وقتی فهمید حال سم خوب است. یک دستمال به طرف سم پرتاب کرد تا صورت خود را تمیز کند و لبخند زد. "فکر کنم الان به اندازه کافی قیف داریم!"



**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Uncle John tried to look casual.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ Uncle John kicked the machine.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ You have to fasten the dough on the machine.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ Sam washed the germs off the machine with caution.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ Uncle John had enough cones for the day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ Sam walked to the ice cream shop.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. Why did Uncle John toss a rag to Sam?
  - a. To clean the floor
  - b. To dissolve the sugar
  - c. To clean his face
  - d. To clean the steel
2. What did Sam anticipate?
  - a. Going to the shop
  - b. Getting an ice cream cone
  - c. Working with his uncle
  - d. The machine exploding
3. What did the machine do?
  - a. Break the barrel
  - b. Give a bad scent
  - c. Scatter dough
  - d. Give a puff of smoke
4. What did Uncle John say about the machine?
  - a. It's easy to use.
  - b. It was swift.
  - c. It was deliberate.
  - d. It was contrary.



prep.

aboard

[ə'bo:d]

(کشتی، قطار و ...) در عرشه، سوار



- ❖ When someone is aboard a ship or plane, they are on or in it.
- They climbed aboard the kayak and paddled through the river.
- آنها در کایاک سوار شدند و در مسیر رودخانه پارو زدند.

adj.

bitter

['bitə]

عصبانی، ناراحت، تند



- ❖ When a person is bitter, they are upset with someone or a situation.
- He was extremely bitter when his computer crashed.
- وقتی کامپیوترش از کار افتاد به شدت ناراحت شد.

n.

bullet

['bulɪt]

گلوله



- ❖ A bullet is a small metal object that is shot out of guns.
- bullets come in different sizes for different guns.
- گلوله‌ها در اندازه‌های گوناگون برای اسلحه‌های متفاوت ساخته می‌شوند.

n.

devil

['dev(ə)l]

شیطان، اهریمن



- ❖ The devil is a powerful evil spirit in some religions.
- The church promised protection from the devil.
- کلیسا قول محافظت در مقابل شیطان را داد.



v.

**drift**

[drift]

شناوربودن، حرکت کردن (معمولاً به آرامی در آب یا هوا)

- ❖ To drift means to be moved slowly by wind or water.
- The large chunk of ice drifted in the water.

➤ یک قطعه بزرگ یخ به آرامی روی آب حرکت کرد.

v.

**enforce**

[in'fɔ:s]

به اجرا درآوردن، پیش بردن

- ❖ To enforce means to make a person follow a rule.
- Police enforce traffic laws to keep everyone safe.

➤ پلیس قوانین ترافیک را اجرا می کند تا ایمنی همه را حفظ کند.

n.

**fountain**

['fauntɪn]

فواره، آب نما

- ❖ A fountain is a source of water made by people.
- There was a beautiful fountain in the middle of the park.

➤ فواره زیبایی در وسط پارک وجود داشت.

n.

**harbor**

['hɑ:bə]

بندرگاه، لنگرگاه

- ❖ A harbor is an area of water along a shore where boats land.
- There were a few small boats in the harbor.

➤ چند قایق کوچک در بندر وجود داشت.





v.

**inhabit**

[in'hæbit]

زندگی کردن، سکنی گزیدن



- ❖ To inhabit means to live in a certain place.
- No one inhabits the ancient city.

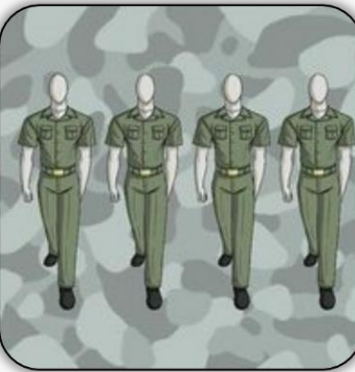
➤ هیچ کس در شهر باستانی زندگی نمی‌کند.

v.

**march**

[ma:tʃ]

رژه رفتن، قدم رو رفتن



- ❖ To march means to walk at a steady pace together with others.
- The soldiers marched in straight rows.

➤ سربازها در ردیف‌های مستقیم رژه رفتند.

n.

**millionaire**

[,mɪljə'neə]

میلیونر، پولدار



- ❖ A millionaire is a person who has at least a million dollars.
- He became a millionaire because he was smart with his money.

➤ او میلیونر شد چون در امور مالی‌اش باهوش بود.

n.

**port**

[pɔ:t]

بندر، بندرگاه، کشتی گاه



- ❖ A port is a place where ships stop to load and unload things.
- The ship was being loaded with materials at the port.

➤ کشتی در بندرگاه در حال بار زدن اجناس بود.

n.

**sheriff**

['ʃerɪf]

کلانتر



❖ A sheriff is a police officer who is in charge of a large area.

➤ It was the sheriff's job to make the city safe.

➤ شغل کلانتر این بود که امنیت را در شهر برقرار کند.

v.

**startle**

['stɑ:tl]

ترساندن، غافلگیرکردن، از جا پریدن یا پراندن



❖ To startle means to scare someone suddenly.

➤ The loud crash startled the sleeping woman.

➤ صدای برخورد بلند، زنی که در خواب بود را شوکه کرد.

v.

**sweat**

[swet]

عرق کردن



❖ To sweat means to lose liquid from the body through the skin.

➤ Whenever I workout, I sweat quite a bit.

➤ هر وقت ورزش می‌کنم، خیلی کم عرق می‌کنم.

n.

**trigger**

['trɪgə]

ماشه



❖ A trigger is the part of the gun that a person pulls to make it fire.

➤ The man had his finger on the trigger of the gun.

➤ مرد انگشت خود را بر روی ماشه تفنگ گذاشته بود.



v.

**unify**

['ju:nifai]

متحد کردن



- ❖ To unify means to bring people or things together.
- With their good deeds, the children tried to unify the world.
- بچه‌ها با کارهای خوب خود سعی کردند جهان را متحد کنند.

n.

**vessel**

['ves(ə)l]

کشتی، قایق بزرگ



- ❖ A vessel is a large ship or boat.
- We toured the area aboard a luxury vessel.
- با سوارشدن بر یک کشتی لوکس در منطقه سفر کردیم.

n.

**voyage**

['vɔɪdʒ]

سفر فضایی، سفر هوایی



- ❖ A voyage is a long journey made on a boat or an aircraft.
- The astronauts took off on a long voyage to the moon.
- فضانوردان سفر طولانی به ماه را شروع کردند.

v.

**worship**

['wɜ:ʃɪp]

نیایش کردن، عبادت کردن



- ❖ To worship means to like and honor a person, thing, or religious figure.
- Many people around the world worship in a church.
- بسیاری از افراد در جهان در کلیسا عبادت می‌کنند.



## Exercise 1

**Choose the word that is a better fit for each blank.**

**1. voyage / vessel**

We cannot go on our \_\_\_\_\_ because there are too many passengers on the small \_\_\_\_\_.

**2. aboard / port**

The ship entered the \_\_\_\_\_, and boxes of supplies were put \_\_\_\_\_.

**3. sheriff / sweat**

The criminal's shirt was soaked with \_\_\_\_\_ because he had been running from the \_\_\_\_\_.

**4. millionaire / fountain**

The \_\_\_\_\_ flew his private jet across the world to visit a new \_\_\_\_\_ that was said to bring people luck.

**5. worship / harbor**

Churches \_\_\_\_\_ many people that want a safe, quiet place to \_\_\_\_\_.

**6. enforce / inhabit**

Criminals \_\_\_\_\_ a prison, and the guards \_\_\_\_\_ the rules.

**7. bullets / trigger**

The criminal pulled the \_\_\_\_\_ of the gun, but it had no \_\_\_\_\_.

**8. unify / march**

To \_\_\_\_\_ the new soldiers, the officer had them \_\_\_\_\_ together for an hour.

**9. startle / devil**

I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ my friends when I show up to the costume party dressed as a \_\_\_\_\_.

**10. bitter / drift**

The boy will be quite \_\_\_\_\_ if you let his kite \_\_\_\_\_ away.

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. I will go on a long journey to Japan this spring.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. I was on a plane headed to South America.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The part of a gun that you pull to make it fire broke off the old gun.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The police officer in charge of a large area arrested the criminal who robbed the bank.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. There is a beautiful water source at the shopping mall.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. My brother likes to hide in the closet and suddenly scare me.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The president wants to bring together the people of her country.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. We sailed the boat into the area where the boats are supposed to land.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. I hope a bear doesn't live in this cave!  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. The evil spirit made me commit the horrible crime.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Exercise 3

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. Which of the following can afford very expensive things?  
a. A sheriff      b. A trigger      c. A millionaire      d. A devil
2. How would a person feel if they were upset about a situation?  
a. Bitter      b. Aboard      c. Startled      d. Unified
3. Where can many sailors be found?  
a. With a bullet      b. On a vessel      c. In a fountain      d. In a sweat
4. What does a toy boat do on water?  
a. Worship      b. Drift      c. Inhabit      d. Enforce
5. What do people do in the army?  
a. Harbor      b. Voyage      c. March      d. Port



# Sheriff Dan

Dan was the evil **sheriff** of Oceantown. Dan was as cruel as the **devil**. He **worshipped** money. Dan was a **millionaire**, but he paid his police officers almost nothing. The police were very **bitter**, but Dan didn't care. He only cared about his money.

Every person who **inhabited** Oceantown disliked him. Dan **enforced** cruel laws. Once, Dan even put his own brother in jail for throwing a coin into a **fountain**! Sometimes he pointed his gun into the air and pulled the **trigger**. He didn't want the **bullets** to hit anyone. He just wanted to scare people with the loud sound.

Finally, the people of Oceantown decided that they had to get rid of Sheriff Dan. With their understanding, the crowd sought to **unify** the town. They **marched** to Dan's house. He was **startled** by the sight when he ran to the door. When he opened the door, the crowd jumped on him. They used a rope to tie him to a chair. Dan yelled, "Get your hands off of me! I'll put you all in jail for the rest of your lives!"

The crowd didn't listen. They carried Dan to the **harbor** and put him **aboard** a **vessel**. Dan was so scared that he began to **sweat**. He begged, "If you let me go, I will give you all my money!"

The crowd said back, "Sheriff, we don't care about your money. We know you will never change. We're sending you on a **voyage** to the middle of the ocean." The boat **drifted** out of the **port**, and Dan was never seen again. The people voted for a new sheriff who was kind and fair.





## کلانتر دن

دن کلانتر بد جنس اوشن تاون بود. دن به اندازه شیطان ظالم بود. او پول را پرستش می‌کرد. دن میلیونر بود اما تقریباً هیچی به افسران پلیس پرداخت نمی‌کرد. پلیس‌ها خیلی خشمگین بودند اما دن اهمیت نمی‌داد. فقط به پول‌هایش اهمیت می‌داد. تمام کسانی که ساکن اوشن تاون بودند از او متنفر بودند. دن قوانین ظالمانه‌ای را اعمال می‌کرد. یکبار، حتی دن برادر خودش را بخاطر پرتاب یک سکه در فواره به زندان انداخت!

گاهی اوقات تنفگ خود را به سمت آسمان می‌گرفت و ماشه را می‌کشید. او نمی‌خواست گلوله به کسی بخورد. فقط می‌خواست مردم را با صدای بلند آن بترساند. بالاخره مردم اوشن تاون تصمیم گرفتند که باید از شر کلانتر دن خلاص شوند. جمعیت، با فهم و درک خود، در جستجوی متحد کردن شهر بودند. به سوی خانه دن رژه رفتند.

با دیدن آن منظره هراسان شد، وقتی که به طرف در دوید. وقتی در را باز کرد، جمعیت روی او پریدند. آنها از یک طناب برای بستن او به صندلی استفاده کردند. دن فریاد زد: "دستاتون رو از من بردارید" "همتون رو بقیه عمرتون می‌ندازم زندان!"

جمعیت گوش نکردند. آنها دن را به بندرگاه بردند و او را سوار یک کشتی کردند. دن آنقدر ترسیده بود که شروع به عرق کردن کرد. التماس کرد، "اگر بزارین برم، تمام پولم رو بهتون می‌دم!"

جمعیت در جواب گفتند: "ما به پول تو اهمیت نمی‌دهیم. می‌دانیم که تو هیچوقت تغییر نخواهی کرد. تو را به سفری طولانی به وسط اقیانوس می‌فرستیم." قایق از شهر ساحلی آرام به بیرون شناور شد، و دن دیگر هیچوقت دیده نشد. مردم به یک کلانتر جدید که مهربان و منصف بود رای دادند.

**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ The sheriff enforced cruel laws.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ Dan pulled the trigger on his gun and shot bullets in the air to scare away criminals.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ With their understanding, the crowd sought to unify the town.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ Dan's police officers were paid almost nothing.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ Dan was sent on a voyage around the world.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ Every person who inhabited Oceantown worshipped Dan.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. Where did the crowd take Dan?
  - a. To the streets
  - b. To the harbor
  - c. To Dan's house
  - d. To the jail
2. At the end of the reading, Dan \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. became fair and kind
  - b. drifted into another port
  - c. was never seen again
  - d. made Oceantown happy
3. Why did Dan put his brother in jail?
  - a. He broke a fair law.
  - b. He tied Dan to a chair.
  - c. He startled Dan.
  - d. He tossed a coin in a fountain.
4. According to the reading, why did the crowd send Dan away?
  - a. The police were bitter towards Dan.
  - b. They wanted Dan's money.
  - c. Dan was a devil to them.
  - d. They hated millionaires.

n.

**apprentice**

[ə'prentɪs]

کارآموز، شاگرد



- ❖ An apprentice is a person who learns how to do a job from a skilled person.
- Mark is an apprentice chef at the restaurant.

➤ مارک در رستوران آشپز تازه‌کار است.

v.

**assure**

[ə'sʊə]

اطمینان دادن، تضمین کردن



- ❖ To assure someone is to tell them something is true to make them less worried.
- He assure the boss that the building would be done on time.

➤ او به رئیس اطمینان داد که ساختمان به موقع تمام می‌شود.

n.

**bandage**

['bændɪdʒ]

بانداز، نوار



- ❖ A bandage is a piece of cloth used to stop bleeding.
- If you cut yourself, please get a bandage from the first-aid kit.

➤ اگر خودتان را زخمی کردید، لطفاً از جعبه کمک‌های اولیه بانداز بردارید.

v.

**bleed**

[bli:d]

خونریزی کردن



- ❖ To bleed is to lose blood.
- If you are not careful, you will cut your finger and bleed.

➤ اگر دقت نکنید، انگشت خود را زخمی کرده و خونریزی می‌کنید.





v.

**bond**

[bɒnd]

ارتباط برقرار کردن، دوست شدن، جور شدن



- ❖ To bond with someone is to become friends with them.
- The women bonded after several hours of conversation.
- زنان بعد از چند ساعت گفت‌وگو ارتباط برقرار کردند.

n.

**chef**

[ʃef]

سرآشپز



- ❖ A chef is a person who cooks in a restaurant.
- Tom is a chef at the restaurant near my house.
- تام در رستورانی نزدیک خانه من آشپز است.

n.

**crown**

[kraun]

تاج پادشاهی، تاج



- ❖ A crown is the hat worn by a king or queen.
- The crown is made of gold.
- تاج از طلا ساخته شده است.

n.

**departure**

[dɪ'pɑ:tʃə]

عزیمت، حرکت از جایی



- ❖ A departure is the act of leaving a place.
- They were excited about their departure back home.
- آنها از عزیمت به خانه هیجان‌زده بودند.



adj.

**diligent**

['dɪlɪdʒ(ə)nt]

سخت کوش، کوشا

- ❖ If someone is diligent, they work hard and are careful.
- Craig has always been a very diligent person at work.

➤ کریگ همیشه در محل کار فردی بسیار کوشا بوده است.



n.

**emperor**

['emp(ə)rə]

امپراتور

- ❖ An emperor is the leader of a group of countries.
- The emperor Julius Caesar was in control of ancient Rome.

➤ روم باستان تحت فرمان امپراتور جولوس سزار بود.



n.

**fiber**

[faɪbə]

رشته، تار، بافت

- ❖ fiber is a thread of a substance used to make clothes or rope.
- The mat was made from tiny fibers.

➤ زیرانداز از الیاف بسیار ریزی درست شده بود.



adj.

**horrible**

['hɒrəbl]

وحشتناک، مهیب، مخوف، ترس انگیز

- ❖ If something is horrible, it is very bad.
- The assignment was horrible. I hated it.

➤ آن تکلیف بسیار بد بود. از آن متنفر بودم.

adj.

**impolite**

[ˌɪmpəˈlaɪt]

بی ادب، بی تربیت



- ❖ If someone is impolite, they are rude.
- Roger is impolite to everyone he meets.

➤ راجر با هرکسی که ملاقات می‌کند بی‌ادب است.

v.

**knee**

[ni:l]

زانو زدن



- ❖ To kneel is to put one or both knees on the ground.
- Daryl got down on one knee and asked Nina to marry him.
- داریل روی یک پا زانو زد و از نینا خواست که با او ازدواج کند.

n.

**luxury**

['lʌkʃ(ə)rɪ]

تجمل، لوکس



- ❖ A luxury is an expensive thing that you do not need.
- We stayed at a luxury resort for our honeymoon.

➤ برای ماه عسل‌مان در اقامتگاهی لوکس ماندیم.

adj.

**massive**

['mæsɪv]

عظیم، سنگین، بزرگ



- ❖ If something is massive, it is very big.
- The wheels on his truck were massive.

➤ چرخ‌های کامیون او بزرگ بودند.



v.

**panic**

['pænik]

وحشت کردن، هراسان شدن



❖ To panic is to feel so nervous or afraid that you cannot think clearly.

➤ Everyone panicked when the house caught on fire.

➤ وقتی خانه آتش گرفت همه ترسیدند.

n.

**priority**

[praɪ'ɔrəti]

اولویت، ارجحیت، تقدم



❖ A priority is something that is more important than other things.

➤ My priority is to get good grades in school.

➤ اولویت من کسب نمرات خود در مدرسه است.

n.

**robe**

[rəʊb]

لباس بلند و گشاد، لباس حمام، ردا



❖ A robe is a long, loose piece of clothing.

➤ Many people wear robes in the morning.

➤ خیلی از مردم صبح‌ها لباس بلند و گشاد می‌پوشند.

v.

**scold**

[skəʊld]

سرزنش کردن، اوقات تلخی کردن



❖ To scold means to criticize one angrily because they have done wrong.

➤ Jesse was scolded by the teacher for not paying attention.

➤ جسی توسط معلمش، به خاطر بی توجهی سرزنش شده بود.

## Exercise 1

Choose the right word for the given definition.

1. hardworking  
a. diligent                      b. massive                      c. horrible                      d. impolite
2. to lose control because of stress  
a. bleed                      b. kneel                      c. panic                      d. bond
3. a person learning a job  
a. emperor                      b. apprentice                      c. chef                      d. thread
4. someone in control of a large area of land  
a. priority                      b. luxury                      c. assure                      d. emperor
5. to angrily tell someone that they did something wrong  
a. scold                      b. bandage                      c. crown                      d. robe

## Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. The dinner plates with designs made of gold were a treat but not needed.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The king wore a large, golden hat.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Joan is a person who gets paid to cook in a restaurant.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. George started to lose blood when he cut his finger.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The book was so bad that I couldn't read the whole thing.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. It is rude to walk away when someone is talking to you.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Everyone is supposed to get down on one knee when the king walks past.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Her new boat is very big. Twenty people can ride on it.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. He wanted to become friends with his new co-workers.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. The long threads were woven into a warm scarf.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Choose the answer that best fits the question.**

1. Why would someone need a bandage?
  - a. They have overeaten.
  - b. They have hurt themselves.
  - c. They are sweaty.
  - d. They are sleepy.
2. If someone panics, what might they do?
  - a. Remain calm
  - b. Begin telling jokes
  - c. Take a quick nap to save energy
  - d. Scream and lose control
3. Where would you probably not see someone wearing a robe?
  - a. At the office
  - b. In a hospital
  - c. At home
  - d. In a king and queen's castle
4. What is a good way to bond with a person?
  - a. To find something you both like
  - b. To argue often
  - c. To tell rumors about them
  - d. To fight with them
5. Which answer below would not be considered an important priority?
  - a. Paying your bills
  - b. Having at least three meals a day
  - c. Drinking plenty of liquids
  - d. Having ice cream
6. Which of the following best describes an apprentice?
  - a. An experienced chef
  - b. A woman learning to drive
  - c. A married man
  - d. A girl learning a new job
7. What will usually happen if someone is diligent?
  - a. Success
  - b. Sadness
  - c. Failure
  - d. Laughter
8. If you kneel, what does that make you become?
  - a. Taller
  - b. Older
  - c. Smaller
  - d. Younger
9. If you are assuring someone of something, what are you doing?
  - a. Making them feel less worried
  - b. Relieving a high fever
  - c. Dreaming with them
  - d. Playing with them
10. Besides a departure time, airplane tickets will also have what other kind of time?
  - a. A fun time
  - b. A sleep time
  - c. A movie time
  - d. An arrival time



# The Helpful Apprentice

There was once a small restaurant. People said that the best **chef** in the world worked there. But the chef was a **horrible** person to work for. He was **impolite** and **scolded** his workers all the time.

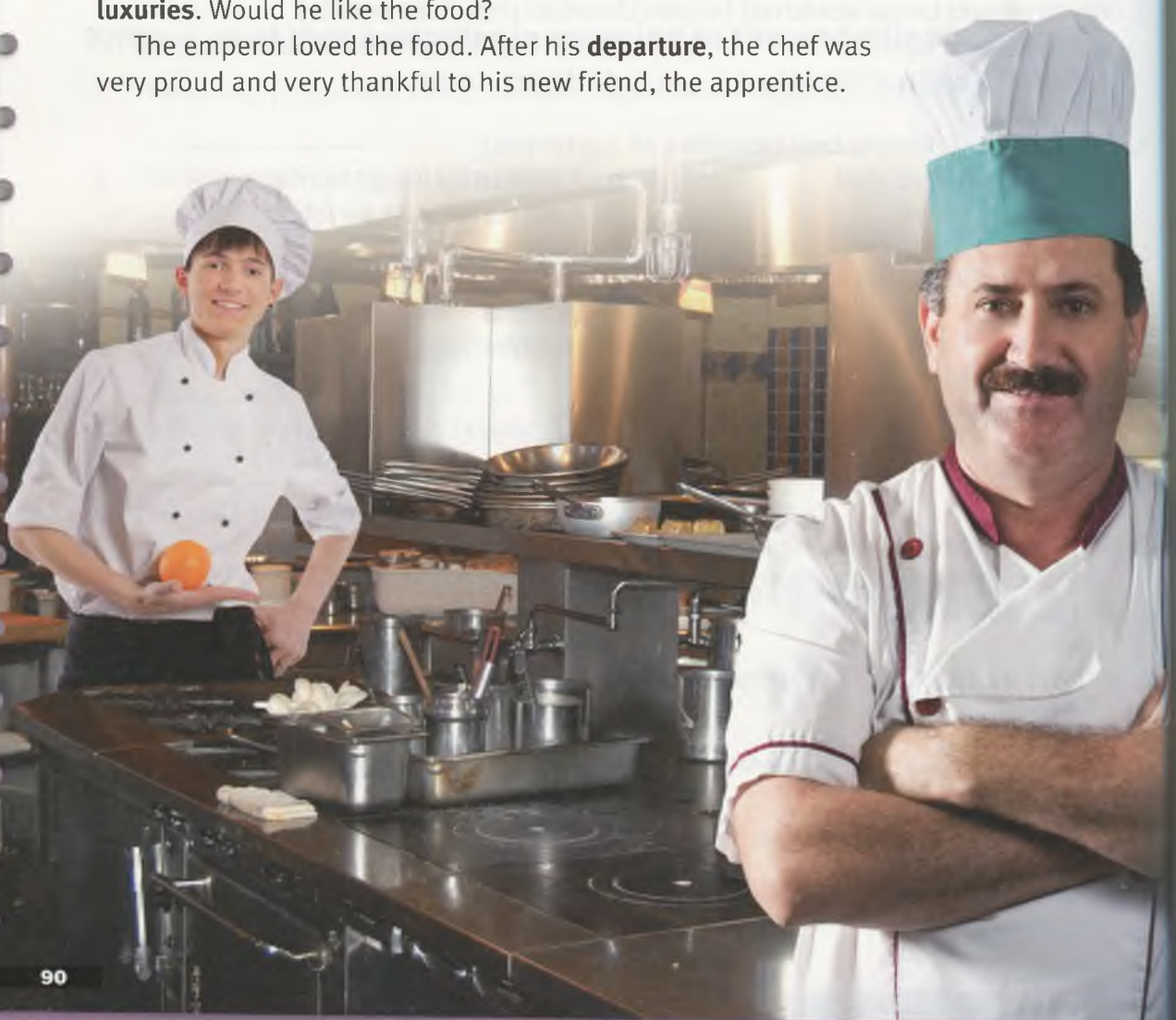
The chef had a young **apprentice**. The apprentice's first **priority** was to make the best food in the world. He was happy to have a good teacher, but he didn't like the chef. The boy was a **diligent** worker, but the chef scolded him more than anyone else.

Then one day, the chef got great news. The **emperor** wanted to have dinner there that night. He was very excited. He was working very fast, and he made a mistake. He cut his hand with a knife, and it started to **bleed**. The apprentice gave him a **bandage**, but the chef still couldn't cook.

The chef started to **panic**. The apprentice tried to **assure** him. "Everything will be OK," he said. But the chef was still afraid. Then they started to work together. They began to **bond**. The chef told the apprentice what to do. The boy cooked a great meal.

As soon as they finished, the emperor arrived. He wore a beautiful **robe** made of soft **fibers**. He also had a **massive crown**. Everyone in the restaurant **kneeled** when the emperor came in. The chef and the boy brought out his food. The emperor was used to **luxuries**. Would he like the food?

The emperor loved the food. After his **departure**, the chef was very proud and very thankful to his new friend, the apprentice.



## شاگرد مفید

روزی روزگاری رستورانی کوچک وجود داشت. مردم می‌گفتند که بهترین سرآشپز دنیا آنجا کار می‌کند. اما سرآشپز آدم بسیار بدی بود که برایش کار کنی. او بی‌ادب بود و همیشه اوقات کارکنان خود را تلخ می‌کرد. سرآشپز یک شاگرد جوان داشت.

اولویت اول شاگرد این بود که بهترین غذا در دنیا را درست کند. خوشحال بود که معلم خوبی دارد، اما از سرآشپز خوشش نمی‌آمد. پسر کارگری زحمت کش و سخت کوش بود، ولی سرآشپز بیشتر از هر کس دیگری او را تحقیر می‌کرد. سپس یک روز، سرآشپز خبری عالی دریافت کرد.

آن شب امپراتور می‌خواست آنجا شام بخورد. او خیلی هیجان زده بود. وقتی که داشت خیلی سریع کار می‌کرد یک اشتباه مرتکب شد. دست خودش را با چاقو برید، و دستش شروع به خون ریزی کرد. شاگرد به او یک بانداژ داد ولی همچنان سرآشپز نمی‌توانست آشپزی کند.

سرآشپز شروع به ترسیدن کرد. شاگرد سعی کرد به او اطمینان دهد. او گفت: "همه چیز درست می‌شه" اما سرآشپز هنوز هم می‌ترسید. بعد شروع به کار کردن با هم کردند. شروع کردند به ارتباط برقرار کردن.

سرآشپز به شاگرد می‌گفت که چه کار بکند. پسر غذایی عالی پخت. به محض اینکه تمام کردند امپراتور رسید. ردایی زیبا بر تن داشت که از الیاف نرم درست شده بود. او همچنین تاج بسیار بزرگی هم داشت. همه در رستوران زانو زدند وقتی امپراتور داخل شد.

سرآشپز و پسر غذای او را بیرون آوردند. امپراتور به غذای تجملاتی عادت داشت. آیا از غذا خوشش خواهد آمد؟ امپراتور عاشق غذا بود. بعد از رفتنش، سرآشپز به شاگرد و دوست جدید خود افتخار می‌کرد و قدردان او بود.



**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ The apprentice helped the chef make food for the Emperor.

---

2. \_\_\_ The chef was a massive person that everyone hated.

---

3. \_\_\_ The Emperor had a crown and a robe.

---

4. \_\_\_ The chef's finger was bleeding and needed a bandage.

---

5. \_\_\_ The chef was very polite and always scolded his workers.

---

6. \_\_\_ The apprentice was a diligent worker.

---

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. Why was the restaurant famous?

- a. It served beautiful fibers.
- b. The chef was very impolite.
- c. The best chef in the world worked there.
- d. The Emperor ate there.

2. Why did the chef panic before the Emperor arrived?

- a. The apprentice assured him things were good.
- b. He wanted to bond with the apprentice.
- c. The Emperor was a horrible person.
- d. He cut himself and couldn't cook.

3. What was the apprentice's first priority?

- a. To fill the restaurant with luxuries
- b. To cook great food
- c. To bond with the chef
- d. To make a meal for the Emperor

4. Why was the chef a bad person to work for?

- a. He was the best chef in the world.
- b. He often cooked for the Emperor.
- c. He often scolded his workers.
- d. He wanted everyone to be diligent.



n.

**affair**

[ə'feə]

امور، مراسم، رویداد

- ❖ An affair is an event or a thing that happened.
- My wife and I attended a formal affair over the weekend.
- من و همسرم طی آخر هفته در یک رویداد رسمی شرکت کردیم.

n.

**assembly**

[ə'sembli]

گردهم‌آیی، نشست، جلسه

- ❖ An assembly is a group that is together for the same reason.
- The students had an assembly to talk about their interests.
- دانش‌آموزان یک گردهمایی داشتند تا درباره علایق خود صحبت کنند.

v.

**bless**

[bles]

دعا کردن

- ❖ To bless is to ask God for protection or help.
- The angel blessed the newborn baby to keep it safe.
- آدم پرهیزگار برای نوزاد تازه متولد شده دعا کرد تا سالم بماند.

n.

**cereal**

['sɪəriəl]

غلات صبحانه

- ❖ cereal is a food that you mix with milk and eat for breakfast.
- cereal is a fast and common breakfast food enjoyed in the U.S.
- غلات یک صبحانه سریع و رایج در آمریکا است که از آن لذت می‌برند.

adj.

**cheerful**

['tʃiəf(ə)]

بشاش، مسرور، شاد



- ❖ If someone is cheerful, they are happy or feel good.
- The children were cheerful because they didn't have to go to school.
- بچه‌ها خوشحال بودند چون مجبور نبودند به مدرسه بروند.

n.

**diameter**

[daɪ'æmɪtə]

قطر



- ❖ The diameter of a round thing is the length across its center.
- The diameter of the tree was about 22 centimeters.
- قطر درخت حدود 22 سانتیمتر بود.

v.

**exploit**

[ɪk'splɔɪt], [ek-]

سو استفاده کردن، استثمار کردن



- ❖ To exploit something is to use it for greedy reasons rather than good reasons. To take advantage of.
- The company exploits their workers and makes them stay 12 hours a day.
- شرکت از کارگزارانش سوءاستفاده می‌کند و آنها را به 12 ساعت کار روزانه وامی‌دارد.

n.

**famine**

['fæmɪn]

قحطی، خشکسالی



- ❖ A famine is a long time with little or no food.
- The farmers couldn't grow any food on the dry soil, so there was a famine.
- کشاورزان نمی‌توانستند در خاک خشک غذا بکارند، به همین خاطر قحطی آمده بود.



n.

harvest

['hɑ:vɪst]

برداشت محصول، خرمن، محصول



- ❖ A harvest is the act of collecting food from farming.
- They had a lot of wheat from the last harvest.
- آنها از آخرین برداشت، مقدار زیادی گندم به دست آوردند.

adj.

merry

['merɪ]

شاد، خوش



- ❖ If someone is merry, they are very happy.
- They felt merry because the weather was great.
- آنها شاد بودند چون هوا عالی بود.

n.

nut

[nʌt]

آجیل



- ❖ A nut is a hard seed or fruit that comes from some trees and bushes.
- To eat a nut, first you have to crack its shell.
- برای خوردن آجیل، اول باید پوسته آن را بشکنید.

v.

pardon

['pɑ:d(ə)n]

عفو کردن، بخشیدن



- ❖ To pardon is a way to ask someone to repeat what was said before.
- pardon me teacher, but could you repeat what you just said?
- معلم ببخشید، ممکن است آنچه را که گفتید دوباره تکرار کنید؟





n.

pharaoh

['feərəʊ]

فرعون

- ❖ A pharaoh was a king in ancient Egypt.
- The pharaohs ruled Egypt for thousands of years.

➤ هزاران سال فرعون‌ها بر مصر حکومت کردند.



adj.

ripe

[raɪp]

رسیده

- ❖ When a fruit is ripe, it is ready to be eaten.
- The cherries were nice and ripe.

➤ گیل‌ها خوب و رسیده بودند.



v.

roast

[rəʊst]

برشته کردن، کباب کردن، بریان کردن

- ❖ To roast something is to cook it in an oven or over a fire.
- Mom roasted a turkey for the holiday dinner.

➤ مامان برای شام تعطیلات بوقلمون کباب کرد.



n.

routine

[ru:'ti:n]

کار همیشگی، روال، روتین

- ❖ A routine is a way of doing things that is the same every time.
- My father's daily routine includes shaving right before breakfast.

➤ کار روزانه پدرم شامل اصلاح قبل از صبحانه می‌شود.

n.

**scheme**

[ski:m]

طرح، برنامه، نقشه

❖ A scheme is a plan or design.

➤ Mickey and Minnie came up with a scheme to solve the problem.

➤ میکی و مینی برای حل مشکل طرحی به ذهنشان رسید.

Monday-Thursday	Friday
7:00 - 9:00 First Class	7:00 - 9:00 First Class
9:00 - 9:55 Enrichment	9:00 - 9:25 Break
9:55 - 10:50 Class 2	9:25 - 10:40 Second Class
10:50 - 12:00 Second Class	10:40 - 10:55 Break
11:00 - 12:00 Lunch Recess Homework Help	10:55 - 12:00 Third Class
12:00 - 1:00 Third Class	12:00 - 12:50 Lunch Recess
1:00 - 1:45 Recess	12:50 - 2:00 Fourth Class
1:45 - 2:00 Fourth Class	2:00 - 2:00 Dismissal

adj.

**slim**

[slɪm]

لاغر، باریک اندام

❖ If something or someone is slim, they are thin.

➤ Look at my new cell phone. It's very slim.

➤ به تلفن همراه جدید من نگاه کن. خیلی باریک است.



n.

**stove**

[stəʊv]

اجاق، اجاق گاز

❖ A stove is a device used to cook food.

➤ Our new stove helps us to cook food much faster than before.

➤ گاز جدیدمان به ما کمک می‌کند تا خیلی سریع‌تر از قبل غذا درست کنیم.



n.

**theft**

[θeft]

دزدی، سرقت

❖ A theft is a criminal act that involves someone stealing something.

➤ The theft of his TV took place when he was at work.

➤ وقتی سر کار بود تلویزیونش دزدیده شد.



## Exercise 1

Circle two words that are related in each group.

1. a. theft                      b. nut                      c. cereal                      d. routine
2. a. roast                      b. pharaoh                      c. stove                      d. pardon
3. a. assembly                      b. affair                      c. bless                      d. exploit
4. a. exploit                      b. famine                      c. merry                      d. cheerful
5. a. scheme                      b. slim                      c. ripe                      d. harvest

## Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. The sun has a larger length across its center than the Earth.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The criminal act of taking something stunned the classroom of friends.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Her new plan may just solve our year-long problem.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The woman wanted the religious man to ask God for help for her.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. During the long time with no food, her family had to move to the city.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The oil company used for greedy reasons the resources of the poor country.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Since he is very skinny, most of his clothes don't fit him too well.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. My thing that I do everyday consists of going to work, the health club, and finally home.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Would you repeat what you just said to me? I didn't quite understand.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. In history class, the students learned about the kings of ancient Egypt.  
\_\_\_\_\_



Choose the word that is a better fit for each blank.

1. ripe / roasted

After picking the \_\_\_\_\_ fruit, the cook \_\_\_\_\_ it in the oven.

2. pardon / theft

The boy didn't hear what the police said, so he asked, "\_\_\_\_\_ me. Did they say that there had been a \_\_\_\_\_ in his home?"

3. famine / pharaoh

During the \_\_\_\_\_, only the \_\_\_\_\_ had enough food to eat.

4. cereal / stove

He wasn't allowed to use the \_\_\_\_\_, so he made himself a bowl of \_\_\_\_\_ instead.

5. slim / harvest

After eating much of the food from the \_\_\_\_\_, she was no longer very \_\_\_\_\_.

6. diameter / nut

You can tell the size of the food inside a \_\_\_\_\_ if you measure the \_\_\_\_\_ of its shell.

7. affair / merry

The party was such a happy \_\_\_\_\_; everyone seemed so \_\_\_\_\_.

8. routine / bless

Her daily \_\_\_\_\_ included visiting her grandmother and asking God to \_\_\_\_\_ her so she would stay healthy.

9. assembly / exploit

The king had a plan to \_\_\_\_\_ the people, but the people had an \_\_\_\_\_ to stop him.

10. cheerful / scheme

She was \_\_\_\_\_ because everything about her \_\_\_\_\_ had worked.

# Why Monkey Has No Home

For five years, there was a **famine**. The farmers asked people to **bless** them and finally, they had a good **harvest**. Since there was now plenty of food, the **pharaoh** decided to have a party. The party was a happy **affair**. For five days they had a huge feast.

Monkey was very happy. Because of the famine, he was very **slim**. He wanted to eat a lot of food.

When he arrived at the feast, hundreds of long tables were filled with food. There were **nuts**, bowls of **cereal**, and **ripe** fruit. He could also smell hot **roasted** meat cooking on the **stove**.

The **assembly** of animals was **merry**. However, during the feast, Monkey thought of a **scheme** to **exploit** the pharaoh's kindness. He decided to steal some of the food and then eat it at home.

All the animals were **cheerful**. They didn't notice that monkey was hiding food. After the feast, Monkey took the food to his house and ate it. He repeated this **routine** every day for four days.

But on the fifth day, the pharaoh had a surprise. He was going to give all the animals a home. Monkey was very excited. But when he arrived at the pharaoh's home, he could not get through the door. The **diameter** of his waist was wider than the doorway. He was too fat!

Monkey asked the pharaoh to forgive him for his **theft**. But the pharaoh said no.

"**Pardon?**" asked the monkey. He didn't understand why the pharaoh was being unkind.

"Everybody else will have a home now, but not you. Now you know that greed gets you nothing," explained the pharaoh.



## چرا میمون خانه‌ای ندارد

برای پنج سال، قحطی بود. کشاورزان از مردم خواستند که دعا کنند و بالاخره، برداشتی خوب داشتند. به دلیل اینکه حالا غذای زیادی وجود داشت، فرعون تصمیم گرفت که یک جشن برگزار کند. جشن رویدادی خوشایند بود.

به مدت پنج روز ضیافتی بزرگ داشتند. میمون خیلی خوشحال بود. به خاطر قحطی، خیلی لاغر بود. او می‌خواست زیاد غذا بخورد. وقتی که به مهمانی رسید، صدها میز بزرگ و طولانی از غذا پر شده بودند.

آجیل، کاسه‌های غلات، و میوه‌های رسیده وجود داشتند. او همچنین می‌توانست بوی گوشت داغ کبابی درون اجاق را استشمام کند. جمع حیوانات همراه با شادی بود. با این وجود، در طول ضیافت، میمون به فکر یک نقشه برای سواستفاده کردن از مهربانی فرعون بود. تصمیم گرفت قسمتی از غذا را بدزد و در خانه بخورد. تمام حیوانات شاد بودند.

آنها متوجه نشدند که میمون در حال پنهان کردن غذاهاست. بعد از ضیافت، میمون غذاها را به خانه برد و آنها را خورد. او این روند را به مدت چهار روز، روزانه تکرار کرد. اما در روز پنجم، فرعون یک سورپرایز داشت. او می‌خواست به همه حیوانات یک خانه بدهد.

میمون بسیار هیجان زده بود. ولی زمانی که به خانه فرعون رسید نمی‌توانست از در عبور کند. قطر کمر او عریض‌تر از در بود. او خیلی چاق بود! میمون از فرعون خواست که او را بابت دزدی کردنش ببخشد. اما فرعون گفت نه. میمون درخواست کرد: "بخشش؟"

نفهمید که چرا فرعون نامهربان بود. فرعون توضیح داد: "همه خانه خواهند داشت، به جز تو. حالا خواهی فهمید که طمع چیزی برای تو نخواهد داشت."



**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ The pharaoh's party was a sad affair.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ There was plenty of ripe fruit at the party from the harvest.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ The assembly of animals was merry.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ Monkey repeated his routine for five days.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ The diameter of Monkey's waist was wider than the doorway.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ The pharaoh asked Monkey, "Pardon?"  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. The pharaoh gave a party for all the animals because \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. they blessed the farmers                      b. the famine ended  
c. he wanted to exploit the animals          d. they were too slim
2. What did Monkey do with the food?  
a. He hid it under the table.                      b. He took it to his house.  
c. He gave it to the pharaoh.                      d. He cooked it in the stove.
3. The tables were full of all of the following EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. vegetables    b. ripe fruit  
c. cereal    d. roasted meat
4. What stopped Monkey from entering the party on the fifth day?  
a. A locked door    b. The pharaoh  
c. His fat waist    d. The other animals

n.

**adolescent** [ˌæd(ə)'les(ə)nt]

نوجوان، نوجوانی



- ❖ An adolescent is a young person or a teenager.
- The adolescent was excited about getting a skateboard for his birthday.
- نوجوان از اینکه برای تولدش اسکیت برد هدیه گرفت هیجان زده شد.

n.

**aptitude** ['æptɪt(j)uːd]

استعداد



- ❖ aptitude is a natural ability or skill.
- He has a natural aptitude for water skiing.
- او استعداد ذاتی برای اسکی روی آب دارد.

v.

**compliment** ['kɒmplɪmənt]

تعریف کردن، تمجید کردن



- ❖ To compliment is to say a nice thing about someone or something.
- Her co-worker complimented her for doing a good job.
- همکاری او به خاطر انجام کار خوب از او تعریف کرد.

v.

**hinder** ['hɪndə]

مانع شدن، جلوگیری کردن



- ❖ To hinder is to keep someone or something from doing something.
- All the traffic hindered me from getting to work on time.
- ترافیک مانع از این شد که سر وقت به محل کار برسم.

n.

**journalism** ['dʒɜ:n(ə)lɪz(ə)m]

روزنامه نگاری، خبرنگاری



- ❖ journalism is the work of collecting the news to put in newspapers or on TV.
- Before becoming a teacher, she worked in journalism.
- قبل از اینکه معلم بشود، روزنامه‌نگار بود.

n.

**jury** ['dʒuəri]

هیئت منصفه، داوران



- ❖ A jury is a group of people that listen to a trial and say if someone is guilty.
- The jury listened closely to the attorney before they made their decision.
- هیئت منصفه قبل از تصمیم‌گیری به دقت به وکیل گوش دادند.

n.

**justice** ['dʒʌstɪs]

عدالت، دادوری



- ❖ justice is fairness in the way that you treat other people.
- People turn to the court system when they are seeking justice.
- وقتی مردم به دنبال عدالت هستند به نظام دادگاه روی می‌آورند.

n.

**liberty** ['lɪbətɪ]

آزادی



- ❖ liberty is freedom to do what you want.
- To many people, the Statue of liberty is a symbol of freedom.
- از نظر بسیاری از مردم، مجسمه آزادی سمبل آزادی‌خواهی است.



adj.

literary

['lɪt(ə)r(ə)rɪ]

ادبی



- ❖ If someone or something is literary, it is involved with literature in some way.
- He worked hard to create a successful literary career.
- او سخت کار کرد تا حرفه ادبی موفق‌تری را به وجود بیاورد.

n.

pharmacy

['fɑ:məsi]

داروخانه



- ❖ A pharmacy is a place where medicine is sold.
- My mother sells medicine to people at the pharmacy.
- مادرم در داروخانه به مردم دارو می‌فروشد.

n.

pill

[pɪl]

قرص



- ❖ A pill is a small object that has medicine inside.
- She took a pill for her headache.
- برای سردردش یک قرص خورد.

v.

presume

[pri'zju:m]

فرض کردن، تصور کردن، گمان کردن



- ❖ To presume is to believe something is true without being certain.
- Since he raised his hand, the teacher presumed he knew the answer.
- چون دستش را بالا برد، معلم گمان کرد جواب را می‌داند.



n.

privacy

['praɪvəsi]

حریم شخصی



❖ To have privacy is to be away from other people.

➤ Please hang the sign on the door so we can have some privacy.

➤ لطفاً علامت را بر روی در آویزان کنید تا بتوانیم حریم خصوصی داشته باشیم.

n.

punishment

['pʌnɪʃmənt]

مجازات، کیفر، تنبیه



❖ A punishment is something that one must endure for any wrongdoing.

➤ He was given a punishment for being rude to the teacher.

➤ چون به معلم بی ادبی کرد تنبیه شد.

adj.

sensible

['sen(t)sɪbl]

معقول، عاقل، فهمیده



❖ If someone is sensible, they make good decisions.

➤ It was sensible for her to save some money each month.

➤ او عاقل بوده که هر ماه مقداری پول پس انداز کرده است.

n.

slice

[slaɪs]

تکه، قاچ، برش



❖ A slice is a piece from something larger, such as a cake.

➤ The girl enjoyed a slice of cake at her birthday party.

➤ دختر از خوردن یک برش کیک در جشن تولدش لذت برد.

n.

**sorrow**

['sɒrəʊ]

غم، اندوه



❖ sorrow is a very sad feeling.

➤ The girl felt sorrow after her best friend moved away.

➤ دختر بعد از اینکه بهترین دوستش آنجا را ترک کرد غمگین شد.

n.

**straw**

[strɔ:]

نی (نوشابه)



❖ A straw is a thin tube that is used to suck liquid into the mouth.

➤ I drank the orange juice through a straw.

➤ با نی آب پرتقال را نوشیدم.

v.

**swell**

[swel]

بادکردن، متورم شدن، بزرگ شدن



❖ To swell is to become larger and rounder.

➤ My sister's stomach began to swell after she got pregnant.

➤ بعد از اینکه خواهرم باردار شد شکمش کم کم بزرگ شد.

adj.

**tidy**

['taɪdɪ]

مرتب، منظم



❖ When something is tidy, it is clean and in order.

➤ Leon has always been a very tidy boy.

➤ لئون همیشه پسر بسیار مرتبی بوده است.



## Exercise 1

Choose the right word for the given definition.

1. the condition of being away from other people  
a. presume      b. privacy      c. slice      d. jury
2. to say something nice to someone  
a. compliment      b. sensible      c. hinder      d. swell
3. an object with medicine inside  
a. straw      b. pill      c. aptitude      d. adolescent
4. fairness to others  
a. sorrow      b. justice      c. liberty      d. punishment
5. a store that sells medicine  
a. pharmacy      b. compliment      c. literary      d. justice

## Exercise 2

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

1. What is a group of people that decides whether someone is guilty or not?  
a. A jury      b. A punishment  
c. A pill      d. An adolescent
2. If you are going to someone's wedding, what will others think?  
a. That you are out for justice      b. That they'll presume you know the couple  
c. That you are tidy      d. That you work in a pharmacy
3. If you have the ability to do something, then you have \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. aptitude      b. swell  
c. privacy      d. hinder
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ person reads a lot of books.  
a. literary      b. liberty  
c. pill      d. journalism
5. If someone exercises regularly, what kind of person can we say they are?  
a. One who has aptitude      b. A sensible person  
c. One who likes to give compliments      d. A person who enjoys a slice of pizza

**Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.**

1. The teacher preferred working with children instead of young people.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. It was hard for the students not to feel sadness or regret at the end of the school year.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The newspaper was known for its excellent work in writing news stories.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The pregnant woman's stomach started to grow larger and rounder.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The wall stopped his ability to see what was on the other side.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Henry's sentence for doing wrong was to spend two years in prison.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Everybody in the group received three pieces or portions of pizza each.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. I asked my father if we had any long tubes for drinking liquid.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. The children enjoyed their freedom on the playground after school.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. The doctor's office was clean and orderly.  
\_\_\_\_\_



# Matthew Learns a Lesson

Matthew was a **sensible** boy. He always kept his room **tidy** and had a natural **literary aptitude**. One day, he hoped to have a career in **journalism**. The **adolescent** spent much of his time reading and liked having **privacy**. But his quiet personality **hindered** his ability to make friends.

One day, Matthew went to the **pharmacy** to pick up some **pills** for his grandmother. He saw some boys leaning against a pole outside. One of the boys **complimented** Matthew. "I like your jacket."

Another boy asked, "Do you want to go to Nate's Restaurant?"

"Sure!" Matthew said.

The boys walked to the restaurant. They were going to have **slices** of pizza. They ordered their food and drank soda with **straws**. They ate until their bellies **swelled up**. Matthew was having so much fun.

One of the boys said, "Let's leave without paying."

Matthew didn't want to. But he **presumed** his new friends wouldn't like him if he didn't.

Suddenly, the waiter yelled, "Stop!" The two other boys ran, leaving Matthew there alone.

Soon, the police arrived. "Leaving without paying for your meal is the same as stealing," said the police officer. "The restaurant wants **justice**. So next week you have to go to court and let a **jury** decide your punishment."

When he went to court, the judge asked, "Do you have anything to say, Matthew?"

He said, "I feel **sorrow** for what I've done. Now I know that real friends won't ask you to do something illegal."

The jury then let him have his **liberty**. But they made Matthew pick up trash as **punishment**.

Much to Matthew's surprise, he ended up meeting some new friends.





## متیو درسی می‌آموزد

متیو پسری معقول بود. او همیشه اتاق خود را مرتب نگه می‌داشت و استعداد ادبی ذاتی داشت. یک روز، امیدوار بود که کاری در روزنامه نگاری داشته باشد. نوجوان اکثر زمان خود را به مطالعه می‌گذراند و دوست داشت حریم خصوصی داشته باشد. ولی شخصیت آرام او مانع از توانایی او در دوست پیدا کردن می‌شد.

یک روز، متیو به داروخانه رفت که تعدادی قرص برای مادر بزرگش بگیرد. او چند پسر دید که به تیری بیرون داروخانه تکیه داده بودند. یکی از پسرها از متیو تعریف کرد. "از ژاکتت خوشم میاد."

یکی دیگر از پسرها پرسید: "می‌خواهی به رستوران نیت بری؟" متیو گفت: "البته"

پسرها به رستوران رفتند. می‌خواستند چند تیکه پیتزا سفارش دهند. غذای خود را سفارش دادند و با نی نوشابه نوشیدند. آنقدر خوردند تا شکمشان باد کرد. متیو خیلی بهش خوش می‌گذشت.

یکی از پسرها گفت: "بیایید بدون اینکه پول بدیم بریم." متیو نمی‌خواست این کار را بکند. اما گمان کرد که اگر این کار را نکند دوستان جدیدش دوستش نخواهند داشت. ناگهان پیشخدمت داد زد: "وایسید" دو پسر دیگر فرار کردند، و متیو را آنجا تنها گذاشتند.

خیلی زود پلیس آمد. پلیس گفت: "رفتن بدون پرداخت کردن برای غذا همانند دزدی است." "رستوران خواهان عدالت بود. پس تو هفته آینده باید به دادگاه بروی تا هیئت ژوری در مورد مجازات تو تصمیم بگیرد."

وقتی به دادگاه رفت قاضی پرسید: "متیو، چیزی برای گفتن داری؟" او گفت: "برای کاری که کرده‌ام غمگینم. حالا می‌دانم که دوستان واقعی از تو نمی‌خواهند که کاری غیر قانونی انجام دهی." زوری سپس اجازه دادند که آزاد شود. اما متیو را مجبور کردند به عنوان مجازات آشغال جمع کند. در کمال تعجب، او در نهایت با چند دوست آشنا شد.

**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ The adolescent had a natural literary aptitude.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ The boy leaning against the pole complimented Matthew's pills.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ Matthew ordered a slice of pizza at the restaurant.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ The boys ate too much, so their bellies swelled.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ Matthew wants to work in the justice system when he grows up.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ The jury allowed Matthew to keep his liberty, but he had to help in the community as punishment.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. Why was Matthew at the pharmacy?  
a. He wanted some privacy.                      b. He needed to buy straws.  
c. He was buying pills.                              d. He felt sorrow.
2. Which of the following is NOT a word used to describe Matthew?  
a. Sensible    b. Optimistic  
c. Rude    d. Tidy
3. Why did Matthew try to leave the restaurant without paying for his meal?  
a. He didn't enjoy the food.                      b. He presumed his friends would like him.  
c. He couldn't find the waiter.                      d. He didn't have enough money.
4. Why did Matthew get to keep his liberty at the end of the story?  
a. He complimented the jury.  
b. He persuaded the jury he had learned his lesson.  
c. He picked up trash as a punishment  
d. He hindered the jury from making a decision.

n.

**affection**

[ə'fekʃ(ə)n]

محبت، مهر، علاقه



❖ affection is a feeling of liking someone or something.

➤ Amanda has a lot of affection for her little sister Sarah.

➤ آماندا محبت زیادی به خواهر کوچکش سارا دارد.

n.

**agency**

['eɪdʒ(ə)n(t)sɪ]

نمایندگی، آژانس، بنگاه



❖ An agency is a business or service set up to act for others.

➤ I went to a travel agency to help me arrange a flight home.

➤ به آژانس مسافرتی رفتم تا در تعیین پرواز برگشت به من کمک کنند.

n.

**ash**

[æʃ]

خاکستر



❖ ash is the grey or black powder created when something is burned.

➤ The end of his cigar was full of ashes.

➤ ته سیگارش پر از خاکستر بود.

v.

**confine**

['kɒnfain]

محدود کردن، زندان کردن، محبوس کردن



❖ To confine something is to keep it in one place.

➤ The elephant is confined to a cage in the zoo.

➤ در باغ وحش فیل در یک قفس محبوس شده است.





v.

**dismiss**

[dɪs'mɪs]

رد کردن، نپذیرفتن

- ❖ To dismiss something is to say it is not important.
- He quickly dismissed my idea about a new project.

➤ او به سرعت ایده من را درباره پروژه جدید رد کرد.



v.

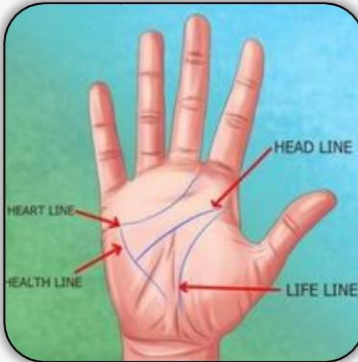
**erupt**

[ɪ'rʌpt]

فوران کردن

- ❖ To erupt is for a volcano or something to shoot a hot substance.
- The volcano erupted for the first time in ten years.

➤ آتشفشان برای اولین بار در ده سال گذشته فوران کرد.



n.

**fate**

[feɪt]

تقدیر، سرنوشت

- ❖ fate is a power that causes some things to happen.
- Some people believe that a person's hand can tell their fate.

➤ برخی مردم معتقدند که کف دست یک فرد می‌تواند تقدیرش را بازگو کند.



n.

**lava**

['lɑ:və]

مواد مذاب، گدازه

- ❖ lava is the hot substance made of melted rock that shoots from volcanoes.
- The red hot lava poured from the volcano.

➤ گدازه داغ و قرمز از آتشفشان جاری شد.



adj.

**miserable**

[ˈmɪz(ə)rəbl]

درمانده، بدبخت

- ❖ If someone is miserable, they are very unhappy.
- He was miserable after his dog died.

➤ او بعد از مرگ سگش، درمانده شد.



v.

**navigate**

[ˈnævɪgeɪt]

هدایت کردن

- ❖ To navigate something is to control the way it moves or goes.
- She navigated the ship across the ocean.

➤ او کشتی را از میان اقیانوس هدایت کرد.



v.

**originate**

[əˈrɪdʒ(ə)neɪt]

آغاز شدن، سرچشمه گرفتن

- ❖ To originate somewhere is to start there.
- The idea of democracy originated in Ancient Greece.

➤ ایده دموکراسی از یونان باستان آغاز شد.



n.

**remainder**

[rɪˈmeɪndə]

باقی مانده، باقی، بقیه

- ❖ The remainder of something is what is left.
- He took a bite of the apple, then gave me the remainder of it.

➤ او یک گاز به سیب زد و باقی آن را به من داد.



v.

retrieve

[ri'tri:v]

برگرداندن، بازیابی کردن

- ❖ To retrieve something is to find it and get it back.
- She retrieved her mail from the mail box.

➤ او نامه خود را از صندوق پست برگرداند.



adj.

shallow

['ʃæləʊ]

کم عمق، سطحی

- ❖ If something is shallow, it is not deep.
- The kids were playing in the shallow water.

➤ کودکان در آب کم عمق بازی می‌کردند.



n.

slope

[sləʊp]

شیب، سراسیمه

- ❖ A slope is ground that is not flat.
- The slope to the top of the mountain was very steep.

➤ شیب مسیر بالای کوه بسیار تند بود.



v.

span

[spæn]

طول کشیدن

- ❖ To span a length of time is to last that long.
- His work began in 1999. It has spanned many years since then.

➤ کارش در 1999 آغاز شد. و از آن زمان سال‌های زیادی ادامه داشته است.







n.

**superstition** [ˌs(j)u:pə'stɪʃ(ə)n]

خرافه، باور خرافی

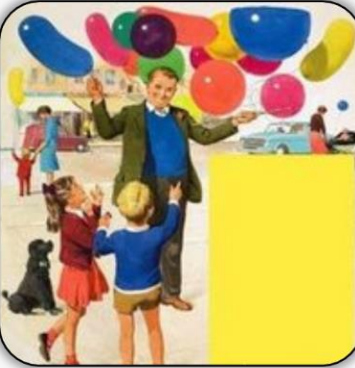


- ❖ A superstition is something magical that people believe is real.
- It is a superstition that Friday the 13th is an unlucky day.
- این یک خرافه است که جمعه سیزدهم روز بدیمنی است.

n.

**sympathy** ['sɪmpəθi]

همدردی، دلسوزی



- ❖ sympathy is a feeling of being sad for another person.
- I felt sympathy for my sister so I got her a balloon to cheer her up.
- با خواهرم همدردی کردم، پس برایش یک بادکنک خریدم تا خوشحال شود.

v.

**vibrate** [vaɪ'breɪt]

لرزیدن، مرتعش کردن، لرزاندن



- ❖ To vibrate is to shake very hard.
- The machine made his whole body vibrate as he broke up the ground.
- وقتی زمین را می‌شکافت، دستگاه کل بدن او را می‌لرزاند.

v.

**wander** ['wɒndə]

پرسه زدن، گشت زدن



- ❖ To wander is to walk without going to a certain place.
- The boys like to wander in the woods and look at birds.
- پسرها دوست دارند در جنگل پرسه بزنند و به پرنده‌ها نگاه کنند.

## Exercise 1

Choose the answer that best fits the question.

- Which of the following mean that something is not important?  
a. Superstition    b. Dismiss    c. Vibrate    d. Miserable
- What is the power that causes things to happen?  
a. Affection    b. To originate    c. To wander    d. Fate
- What is the hot liquid from a volcano called?  
a. Shallow    b. Ash    c. Slope    d. Lava
- What is something that a volcano does?  
a. Fate    b. Erupt    c. Remainder    d. Sympathy
- What is it called to have belief in something magical?  
a. Superstition    b. Vibrate    c. Agency    d. Confine

## Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- John was very unhappy when he lost his favorite book.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Manny found a job with a local news company that deals with other businesses.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The river in front of her house is not deep.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I don't like to keep in one place my dog; I want him to run around.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The house burned down, and there was only grey powder left.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- She has to control where to go when she travels with her father.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- My plan to become a farmer started when I was a child.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- He has a feeling of love for his grandfather.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The people left the town when the ground started shaking.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I had a feeling of sadness for her when her dog died.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Choose the word that is a better fit for each blank.

1. originated / superstition

The \_\_\_\_\_ from Europe and was brought to North America.

2. agency / dismissed

The \_\_\_\_\_ quickly \_\_\_\_\_ his idea as being too unrealistic to be of any use.

3. slope / lava

Their house is built on a \_\_\_\_\_. There is great concern that \_\_\_\_\_ from a nearby volcano will destroy the house easily.

4. vibrate / fate

When he learned of his \_\_\_\_\_, he was frightened. It made his entire body \_\_\_\_\_ uncontrollably.

5. sympathy / confine

Please \_\_\_\_\_ your \_\_\_\_\_ for someone who really needs it.

6. ash / erupted

A gray cloud of \_\_\_\_\_ from the tailpipe of the car that had not been started in three years.

7. retrieve / miserable

I felt \_\_\_\_\_ all evening. Perhaps I caught a virus when I had to \_\_\_\_\_ the missing sheep from the heavy rainstorm.

8. wander / affection

I have great \_\_\_\_\_ for those who do exciting things. When I was young, I would often \_\_\_\_\_ the countryside just for fun.

9. remainder / shallow

We sent the youngsters home while the \_\_\_\_\_ of the group crossed the \_\_\_\_\_ but fast moving stream.

10. spanned / navigate

It was a difficult trip, but we managed to \_\_\_\_\_ our way through the wilderness in a trip that \_\_\_\_\_ five days.



# The Magic Cup

Paul and John were brothers. They fought all the time because they both wanted to be leaders of the **agency** they both worked at.

There was a **superstition** in their town about a magic cup. People said the cup was in a volcano located far away. Anyone who **retrieved** the cup would have their wish come true. John and Paul both wanted to find it. Then they could become the leader.

They both left to find the cup. Before their trip, their mother said they should work together. They **dismissed** that idea. Even though their trips **originated** from the same house, each wanted to travel alone.

They were both **miserable** during the trip. They had to **navigate** small boats across **shallow** rivers and climb difficult **slopes**. Their journey **spanned** many days. When they finally got close to the volcano, the ground began to **vibrate** and the volcano **erupted**. **Ash** filled the sky and **lava** covered everything. John climbed to the top of a hill to keep from getting burned. A few moments later, his brother went up the same hill. They were **confined** to the hill until the lava cooled down.

They talked about the things they had seen while **wandering** around the country. They felt more **sympathy** and **affection** for each other than ever before. They decided that **fate** had brought them together.

The next day they left to finish the **remainder** of the trip together. Everything seemed much easier. When they finally found the cup, they learned that it didn't make wishes come true. It was only an ordinary cup. But the trip to reach the cup taught them to work together and love each other.



## فنجان جادویی

پاول و جان برادر بودند. آنها تمام وقت دعوا می‌کردند زیرا هر دوی آنها می‌خواستند تا رئیس آژانسی باشند، که هر دو آنجا کار می‌کردند. در شهر آنها خرافه‌ای در مورد فنجانی جادویی وجود داشت. مردم می‌گفتند آن فنجان در یک آتشفشان خیلی دور قرار دارد. هر کسی که فنجان را بازگرداند آرزویش برآورده خواهد شد. جان و پاول هر دو می‌خواستند آن را پیدا کنند. که بعدش بتوانند رئیس شوند. هر دو راهی شدند تا فنجان را پیدا کنند. قبل از سفرشان، مادرشان گفت آنها باید با هم کار کنند.

آنها آن ایده را قبول نکردند. با وجود اینکه سفر آنها هر دو از یک خانه شروع می‌شد، هر کدام می‌خواستند تنها سفر کنند. هر دوی آنها در طول سفر بدبخت بودند. باید قایق‌های کوچکی را در عرض رودخانه‌های کم عمق هدایت می‌کردند و از زمین‌های شیب‌داری بالا می‌رفتند. سفر آنها روزهای زیادی طول کشید. وقتی آنها بالاخره به آتشفشان نزدیک شدند، زمین شروع به لرزیدن کرد و آتشفشان فوران کرد.

خاکستر آسمان را پر کرد و مواد مذاب همه چیز را پوشاند. جان روی نوک یک تپه رفت تا نسوزد. چند لحظه بعد، برادرش رفت بالای همان تپه. آنها تا زمانی که مواد مذاب سرد شد روی تپه محبوس شدند. در مورد چیزهایی که حین چرخیدن در سراسر کشور دیده بودند، صحبت کردند. نسبت به هر زمانی در گذشته، احساس دلسوزی و محبت بیشتری به هم می‌کردند. به این نتیجه رسیدند که تقدیر آنها را پیش هم آورده است. روز بعد آنها راهی شدند تا باقی سفرشان را تمام کنند.

همه چیز آسانتر به نظر می‌رسید. وقتی بالاخره فنجان را یافتند، فهمیدند که آرزو برآورده نمی‌کند. فقط یک فنجان معمولی بود. ولی سفر رسیدن به فنجان به آنها آموخت که با هم کار کنند و همدیگر را دوست داشته باشند.

**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ The trip to find the magic cup was very easy.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ The boys dismissed their mother's advice before they left for the trip.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ The boys were confined to a hilltop by the lava after the volcano erupted.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ A superstition said that anyone who retrieved the cup would become the leader of the agency.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ The boys had more affection and sympathy for each other after the trip.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ After the volcano erupted, there was ash in the sky and lava on the ground.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. Why didn't the boys travel together?
  - a. Their trips originated from different places.
  - b. They were both miserable.
  - c. They had to navigate boats across shallow rivers.
  - d. They wanted to travel alone.
2. Why were the boys always fighting??
  - a. The cup had special powers.
  - b. They had very little food to eat.
  - c. There was a hole beneath the tree.
  - d. They both wanted to be leaders of the agency.
3. Why did fate bring the boys together?
  - a. To show that stories about the tree weren't true
  - b. So they could complete the remainder of the trip together
  - c. So they could return home together
  - d. So their trip could span many days
4. What was surprising about the cup?
  - a. It was only an ordinary cup.
  - b. It did not really exist.
  - c. It had their names written on it.
  - d. It was made of gold.



n.

armor

['ɑ:mə]

زره

- ❖ armor is metal worn by soldiers to protect the body.
- The soldier wore armor to protect his body.

➤ سرباز زره پوشید تا از بدنش محافظت کند.



v.

blaze

[bleiz]

شعله زدن، زبانه کشیدن (با نور و حرارت زیاد)

- ❖ To blaze means to burn brightly or powerfully.
- The small fire soon blazed into a large dangerous one.
- آتش کوچک خیلی زود به شکل آتش خطرناک بزرگی زبانه کشید.



v.

boom

[bu:m]

غریدن، غرش کردن

- ❖ To boom means to make a loud, deep sound.
- The firecrackers made a loud boom when they exploded.
- وقتی ترقه‌ها منفجر شدند صدای غرش بلندی به گوش رسید.



n.

cliff

[klɪf]

پرتگاه، صخره

- ❖ A cliff is a high and often flat wall of rock.
- The wolf stood at the cliff and howled.

➤ گرگ بر روی صخره ایستاد و زوزه کشید.



n.

flame

[fleɪm]

شعله



- ❖ A flame is part of fire.
- The torch was filled with yellow and orange flames.
- شعله‌های مشعل زرد و نارنجی بودند.

n.

independence [ˌɪndɪˈpendən(t)s]

استقلال، بی‌نیازی از دیگران



- ❖ independence is the state of being free from the control of others.
- After leaving home, Sophia had a great feeling of independence.
- بعد از ترک خانه، سوفیا حس عالی استقلال را تجربه کرد.

n.

invasion

[ɪnˈveɪz(ə)n]

اشغال، هجوم، یورش



- ❖ An invasion is an attack by a group from another country.
- In Korea, walls were built around cities to protect them from invasions.
- در کره، دور شهر دیوارهایی می‌ساختند تا در مقابل هجوم دشمن از آن حفاظت کنند.

n.

knight

[naɪt]

شوالیه



- ❖ A knight is a soldier of high rank and skill who usually serves a king.
- He was the best soldier, so the king made him a knight.
- او بهترین سرباز بود، پس پادشاه او را شوالیه نامید.



n.

**lightning**

['laɪtnɪŋ]

صاعقه، آذرخش

- ❖ lightning is the bright light seen during a storm.
- The lightning flashed above the water.

➤ آذرخش بر روی آب درخشید.



n.

**rebel**

['reb(ə)l]

شورش، یاغی

- ❖ A rebel is a person who fights the government in order to change it.
  - The rebel had enough of the government's unfair polices.
- فرد شورشی بقدر کافی از سیاست‌های ناعادلانه دولت رنج برد.



v.

**retreat**

[rɪ'tri:t]

عقب نشینی کردن

- ❖ To retreat means to run away because you have been beaten in a fight.
  - The army retreated because they were losing the battle.
- ارتش عقب‌نشینی کرد چون داشت در جنگ شکست می‌خورد.



n.

**revolution**

[,rev(ə)'lu:ʃ(ə)n]

انقلاب

- ❖ A revolution is a change to the political system by a group of people.
  - The revolution in Russia led to the creation of the Soviet Union.
- انقلاب در روسیه به ایجاد اتحاد جماهیر شوروی منجر شد.





n.

spear

[spiə]

نیزه



- ❖ A spear is a long stick with a blade on one end that is used as a weapon.
- The soldier was holding a spear in his hand.

➤ سرباز در دست خود یک نیزه داشت.

adj.

steep

[sti:p]

پر شیب، سر بالا، سر پایین، شیبدار



- ❖ If something is steep, then its slope or angle rises or falls sharply.
- He rode his bike up the steep hill to reach the top.

➤ او با دوچرخه‌اش از تپه پرشیب بالا رفت تا به نوک آن رسید.

n.

summit

['sʌmɪt]

قله، اوج



- ❖ A summit is the highest part of a hill or mountain.
- Snow covered the summit of the mountain even during the summer.

➤ برف حتی در تابستان نوک کوه را پوشاند.

n.

thunder

['θʌndə]

تندر، رعد، رعد و برق



- ❖ thunder is the loud noise heard during a storm.

➤ The sound of the thunder startled me.

➤ صدای رعد من را از جا پراند.



n.

**troops**

[tru:p]

سربازان



- ❖ troops are soldiers that fight in groups in a battle.
- The troops were all prepared to go into battle.

➤ همه سربازان آماده بودند تا به جنگ بروند.

n.

**warrior**

['wɔ:riə]

مبارز، جنگجو



- ❖ A warrior is a brave soldier or fighter.
- The samurai were some of the most skilled warriors in the ancient world.

➤ سامورایی یک مبارز بسیار ماهر در جهان باستان بود.

v.

**withdraw**

[wɪð'drɔ:]&nbsp;

عقب کشیدن، عقب نشینی کردن



- ❖ To withdraw means to leave a place, usually during war.
- After losing the battle, the enemy withdrew back to its own country.

➤ دشمن بعد از شکست در جنگ به شهر خودش عقب‌نشینی کرد.

v.

**yield**

[ji:ld]

تسلیم شدن، تسلیم شدن یا کردن



- ❖ To yield something means to give up control of it or to give it away.
- He had to yield his turn because he was in checkmate.

➤ چون کیش و مات بود نوبت خود را واگذار کرد.

## Exercise 1

### PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to give up control  
a. revolution      b. flame      c. yield      d. independence
- to make a loud, deep sound  
a. boom      b. spear      c. cliff      d. blaze
- the highest point  
a. knight      b. retreat      c. steep      d. summit
- a flat wall of rock  
a. lightning      b. cliff      c. armor      d. withdraw
- someone who disagrees with those in charge  
a. thunder      b. invasion      c. rebel      d. troop

### PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- flame  
a. a small piece of fire      b. the total amount  
c. a long stick      d. a loud sound
- spear  
a. metal worn to protect      b. a brave soldier  
c. a sharp weapon      d. to give up control
- withdraw  
a. to leave a place      b. a group of soldiers  
c. to burn brightly      d. to stab with a point
- lightning  
a. a mountain      b. to run away  
c. a high flat rock      d. what you see during a storm
- knight  
a. a king      b. a skilled soldier  
c. a strange event      d. a group attack

## Exercise 2

### Circle two words that are related in each group.

- a. withdraw      b. armor      c. steep      d. retreat
- a. blaze      b. flame      c. summit      d. independence
- a. cliff      b. spear      c. rebel      d. revolution
- a. yield      b. knight      c. warrior      d. boom
- a. thunder      b. troop      c. lightning      d. steep



Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Miguel did not want to give up control of his managerial powers.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. With his long pointed stick with a blade at the end, he was able to defend himself.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. During the storm we heard loud noises.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The army was beaten, so it ran away to a safe place.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The soldiers who fought in groups during the battle were exhausted after the conflict.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The metal we wore to protect our body was heavy and hot during the summer.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. We walked carefully down the sharp angle of the mountain.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. A feeling of being free came over all the people after the election of a new prime minister.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. The soldiers managed to hold off the attack from another group.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. We heard a loud sound when the hammer hit the brick wall.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# The Knight's Plan

A town was fighting for their **independence** from another country. Several **rebels** started a **revolution**. However, they were afraid of an **invasion** from a lot of **troops**. They didn't have enough **warriors** to stop them, so they asked a **knight** for help.

The knight made a plan. A tall mountain was outside the town. The road near the top was very narrow. **Cliffs** rose on both sides of it.

"We must trick the enemy. They have to follow us up the mountain," the knight explained. "On the narrow path, only a few can attack us at one time."

The people agreed with the knight's plan.

The knight put on his **armor**, and the warriors got their **spears**. When the enemy attacked, the knight and warriors acted as if they were afraid. They quickly **withdrew** toward the mountain.

The enemy troops followed them up the **steep** path. Soon, the enemy became tired.

At the **summit**, the knight and his troops stopped. The enemy was close behind them. But now they were tired. Also, only a few could attack because the path was narrow. The knight and the warriors fought the enemy. But there were too many troops.

The knight was afraid. If the warriors **yielded** the path to the enemy, the town would be lost.

A storm suddenly came over the mountain. There was strong wind and rain. **Thunder boomed**. **Lightning** struck some trees near the enemy. The trees **blazed**. The **flames** scared the enemy and they **retreated**. They ran down the mountain, out of the town, and never returned.

The knight explained, "With a little luck, a good plan beats even a big army."





## نقشه شوالیه

یک شهر برای استقلال خود از کشوری دیگر، می‌جنگیدند. چند یاغی انقلاب را آغاز کردند. با این وجود، آنها نگران تهاجم از طرف سربازان زیادی بودند. جنگ‌جوه‌های کافی برای متوقف کردن آنها نداشتند، از این رو از یک شوالیه درخواست کمک کردند.

شوالیه یک نقشه کشید. کوهی بلند خارج از شهر وجود داشت. جاده نزدیک قله بسیار باریک بود. صخره‌ها در دو طرف آن بوجود آمده بودند. شوالیه توضیح داد: "ما باید دشمن را گول بزنیم. باید مجبور باشند دنبال ما به بالای کوه بیایند.

در مسیر باریک، فقط چندتا می‌توانند همزمان با ما بجنگند. افراد با نقشه شوالیه موافقت کردند. شوالیه زره خود را پوشید، و جنگ‌جوها نیزه‌های خود را برداشتند. زمانی که دشمن حمله کرد، شوالیه و جنگ‌جوها به گونه‌ای رفتار کردند که گویی ترسیده بودند.

آنها سریعاً به طرف کوه عقب‌نشینی کردند. سربازان دشمن آنها را تا مسیر شیب دار دنبال کردند. خیلی زود، دشمن خسته شد. در قله، شوالیه و سربازان او ایستادند. دشمن نزدیک آنها در پشت سرشان بود. اما حالا آنها خسته بودند.

همینطور، تنها تعدادی اندک می‌توانستند حمله کنند زیرا مسیر باریک بود. شوالیه و جنگ‌جوها با دشمن جنگیدند. اما سربازهای زیادی وجود داشتند.

شوالیه ترسیده بود. اگر جنگ‌جوها مسیر را به دشمن تسلیم می‌کردند، شهر از دست می‌رفت. ناگهان طوفانی به کوه آمد. باد و باران شدیدی بود. رعد و برق صدای مهیبی داد. ساعقه به چند درخت در نزدیکی دشمن برخورد کرد. درختان شعله ور شدند.

شعله‌ها دشمن را ترساند و آنها عقب‌نشینی کردند. آنها به پایین کوه فرار کردند، خارج از شهر، و هیچوقت برنگشتند.

شوالیه توضیح داد: "با کمی شانس، نقشه‌ای خوب حتی ارتشی بزرگ را شکست می‌دهد."



**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ The town was afraid of an invasion.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ The town agreed with the knight's plan.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ The warriors wore armor, and the knight used a spear.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ The path to the summit was steep.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ Some rebels started a revolution for their independence.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ Sounds from the trees scared the enemy.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. Why was the narrow path important to the knight's plan?  
a. Few soldiers could attack from it.      b. It led to a high cliff.  
c. It was a safe place to hide.              d. The enemy troops were afraid of it.
2. After they withdrew to the mountain, where did the knight and warriors stop?  
a. Between two cliffs                              b. At the summit  
c. Near the bottom                                  d. Out of the town
3. Why didn't the enemy think there was a trap?  
a. They had more troops.                        b. They thought the soldiers were scared.  
c. They were tired.                                d. They were scared.
4. All of the following happened after the storm came EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. thunder boomed                                b. the trees blazed  
c. the knight retreated                            d. lightning struck

n.

**bench**

[bentʃ]

نیمکت



- ❖ A bench is a long seat for two or more people.
- Most parks have benches for citizens to relax upon.
- در اکثر پارک‌ها نیمکت‌هایی برای استراحت شهروندان وجود دارد.

v.

**confront**

[kən'frʌnt]

مواجه شدن، رو به رو شدن



- ❖ To confront a hard situation or person is to deal with it.
- The couple has to confront each other about their problems.
- زوج باید درباره مشکلات خود با یکدیگر روبه‌رو شوند.

n.

**daisy**

['deɪzi]

گل مینا



- ❖ A daisy is a small flower with white petals and a yellow center.
- There were a few daisies' growing in the field.
- تعدادی گل مینا در مزرعه رشد می‌کرد.

n.

**dispute**

[dɪs'pju:t],

مشاجره، جدل

['dɪspju:t]



- ❖ A dispute is an argument or disagreement that people have.
- Karen and Brian often have disputes about silly things.
- کارن و بریان اغلب بر سر چیزهای احمقانه مشاجره می‌کنند.



n.

**horror**

['hɒrə]

وحشت، ترس

- ❖ horror is a feeling of being very afraid or shocked.
- The audience screamed in horror when the ghost appeared in the movie.
- حضار با دیدن روح در فیلم از وحشت فریاد زدند.



n.

**incident**

['ɪn(t)sɪd(ə)nt]

حادثه، پیشامد

- ❖ An incident is an event that is usually not pleasant.
- Mr. Wilson had an incident where he became sick and had to leave.
- آقای ویلسون در حادثه‌ای مریض شد و باید آنجا را ترک می‌کرد.



n.

**mist**

[mɪst]

مه

- ❖ mist is water that you can see in the air or on a surface.
- The forest was covered with mist.
- جنگل از مه پوشیده شده بود.



n.

**object**

['ɒbdʒɪkt], [-dʒekt]

شی

- ❖ An object is an inanimate thing that you can see or touch.
- The shopping cart was filled with objects.
- چرخ دستی خرید پر از اشیاء بود.



n.

orphan

['ɔ:f(ə)n]

یتیم



- ❖ An orphan is a child who does not have parents.
- The orphan frequently cried during the night.

➤ آن یتیم بارها در طول شب گریه کرد.

v.

plot

[plɒt]

نقشه کشیدن، توطئه چیدن



- ❖ To plot is to make a secret plan to do something that is wrong or mean.
- The group was plotting to ruin the company's financial reports.
- گروه نقشه می کشید که گزارش های مالی شرکت را خراب کند.

adj.

pregnant

['pregnənt]

باردار، حامله



- ❖ When a female is pregnant, she is going to have a baby.
- The pregnant woman was shopping for baby clothes.

➤ خانم باردار برای نوزادش لباس می خرید.

n.

rage

[reɪdʒ]

خشم، غضب



- ❖ rage is a very angry feeling.

- The chef was filled with rage when his helpers ruined the meal.

➤ آشپز خشمگین شد وقتی دستیاران او غذا را خراب کردند.



n.

revenge

[ri'vendʒ]

انتقام



- ❖ revenge is what you do to hurt or punish someone who hurts you.
- He broke his sister's doll as revenge after she lost his favorite book.
- بعد از اینکه خواهرش کتاب مورد علاقه او را گم کرد، عروسک خواهرش را به نشانه انتقام خراب کرد.

n.

shame

[ʃeɪm]

شرم، خجالت



- ❖ shame is a bad feeling about things you have done wrong.
- The boy felt shame about misplacing his clothes.
- پسر با گم کردن لباس‌هایش شرم‌منده شد.

v.

sigh

[saɪ]

آه کشیدن، حسرت خوردن، افسوس خوردن



- ❖ To sigh is to breathe out loudly and show that you are tired or sad.
- Molly sighed when she looked at all the information she had to research.
- وقتی مولی به همه اطلاعاتی که باید جستجو می‌کرد نگاه کرد آه کشید.

v.

sneak

[sni:k]

یواشکی رفتن، دزدکی حرکت کردن



- ❖ To sneak is to move quietly so that no one hears or sees you.
- The thief snuck out of the house without anyone noticing him.
- دزد بدون اینکه کسی متوجه شود یواشکی از خانه بیرون رفت.



v.

**spare**

[speə]

دادن، بخشیدن



❖ To spare something is to give it because you have more than you need.

➤ I wanted to help him but I couldn't spare a tire.

➤ می‌خواستم به او کمک کنم اما نمی‌توانستم یک تایر را ببخشم.

n.

**stem**

[stem]

ساقه



❖ The stem of a plant is the stick that grows leaves or flowers.

➤ The rose had a long thin stem.

➤ گل رز ساقه نازک و بلندی داشت.

n.

**supper**

['sʌpə]

شام (معمولاً شام سبک)



❖ supper is a meal that is eaten in the evening.

➤ We usually have supper around 6 o'clock at my house.

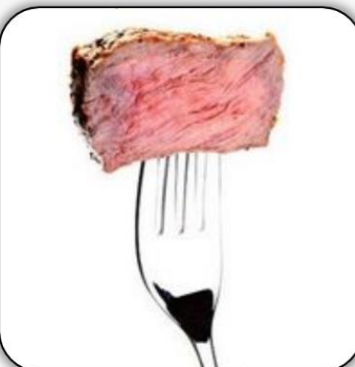
➤ ما معمولاً حدود 6 عصر در خانه من شام می‌خوریم.

adj.

**tender**

['tendə]

نرم



❖ When something is tender, it is soft and easy to chew.

➤ The meat was so tender they didn't need knives to cut it with.

➤ گوشت آنقدر نرم بود که آنها برای برش نیاز به چاقو نداشتند.



## Exercise 1

### PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to deal with a difficult situation  
a. revenge                      b. confront                      c. supper                      d. object
- a part of a flower  
a. horror                      b. mist                      c. bench                      d. stem
- soft and easy to chew  
a. tender                      b. retreat                      c. steep                      d. summit
- feeling of being afraid  
a. incident                      b. pregnant                      c. horror                      d. spare
- to breathe air  
a. sigh                      b. daisy                      c. shame                      d. orphan

### PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- bench  
a. quiet                      b. a seat                      c. no parents                      d. meal
- plot  
a. to plan                      b. a flower                      c. to get even                      d. soft
- supper  
a. a hard situation                      b. breathe                      c. meal                      d. flower part
- dispute  
a. an argument                      b. a shock                      c. flat rock                      d. a baby
- incident  
a. water                      b. to feel bad                      c. extra                      d. a bad event

## Exercise 2

### Choose the answer that best fits the question.

- If a child loses their parents, what do they become?  
a. A daisy                      b. An orphan                      c. A spare                      d. An object
- What would you call someone who can spare time to help you?  
a. greedy                      b. mean                      c. kind                      d. arrogant
- What is something that would fill you with shame?  
a. Buying new shoes                      b. Stealing from your grandparents  
c. Eating cake                      d. Buying some books
- What would put a person in a rage?  
a. Getting a new job                      b. A bright sunny day  
c. Meeting friends                      d. Someone stealing their car
- If you sneak, what are you doing?  
a. Loudly talking                      b. Trying not to be seen  
c. Trying not to be heard                      d. Happily singing

## Choose the word that is the better fit for each blank.

1. mist / daisy

She went to the lawn and cut a \_\_\_\_\_ from the garden. It smelled good and was covered in \_\_\_\_\_.

2. dispute / confronted

The employees had a long \_\_\_\_\_ with the owner over their low pay. Eventually, one worker \_\_\_\_\_ the owner and was finally able to solve the problem.

3. bench / sighed

She looked across the schoolyard, hoping to find an empty \_\_\_\_\_ where she could rest. Since they were all full, she \_\_\_\_\_ and sat on the ground instead.

4. incident / horror

The \_\_\_\_\_ of the car accident made him too scared to drive. It wasn't until three years after the \_\_\_\_\_ that he got into a car again.

5. pregnant / spare

The \_\_\_\_\_ woman couldn't go to work anymore, so she had a lot of to \_\_\_\_\_ with her hobbies.

6. revenge / plotted

He wasn't usually a person who tried to get \_\_\_\_\_. However, when he learned that his classmates had \_\_\_\_\_ against him, he changed his position.

7. stems / rage

A dog got into the garden and ate all the flowers, leaving behind only the \_\_\_\_\_. When the owner found out, he felt \_\_\_\_\_.

8. tender / supper

Mr. Holloway cooked hamburgers and vegetables for \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday. Everything was cooked very well. The meat was juicy and the vegetables were \_\_\_\_\_.

9. sneak / orphan

The \_\_\_\_\_ didn't have anybody to take care of him. He often had to \_\_\_\_\_ into empty houses during the winter just to keep warm.

10. shame / objects

A thief had taken several \_\_\_\_\_ from the museum. After a few days, however, he felt a sense of \_\_\_\_\_ and returned everything.



# The Magic Pear Tree

It was a cool morning, and the grass was covered in **mist**. The market was full of people. A mean farmer named Jack yelled, "Pears for sale!" He sat on a **bench**, **plotting** how he could trick people. Then an **orphan** came to his cart.

"Can you **spare** a pear?" she asked.

Jack felt **rage**. He replied, "You don't have any money!"

"Please, I haven't had **supper** in days."

"No!" shouted the farmer.

The orphan **sighed**. However, a **pregnant** lady heard the **dispute** and **confronted** Jack. "Just give her a pear," she said. Jack had no **shame** and said no. Finally, a man bought a pear for the girl.

The girl quickly ate it, but she saved the seed. She wanted to get **revenge**.

She told Jack, "I know a way to get hundreds of pears in one day. I'll show you how."

He watched the girl dig a hole. She dropped the seed into the ground. Then she spread the dirt over it.

"Watch closely," she said. "In a few minutes, a **stem** will grow. It'll turn into a tree that's full of pears!"

Jack stared at the dirt, but nothing happened. The only **objects** there were a few **daisies**. He looked for the girl, but she had **snuck** away.

Then he looked at his cart in **horror**. It was empty! He suddenly realized that the orphan had tricked him. While Jack was waiting for the tree to grow, the people had taken the pears from his cart. They all laughed while they were eating the **tender** fruit. The farmer felt ashamed. The **incident** taught him to be kinder.





## درخت گلابی جادویی

صبح خنکی بود و علف‌ها از مه پوشیده شده بودند. بازار مملو از آدم بود. کشاورزی بدجنس به نام جک فریاد می‌زد: " گلابی برای فروش!"

او روی نیمکتی نشسته بود و نقشه می‌کشید که چطور می‌تواند مردم را فریب بدهد. سپس یتیمی به سمت گاری او آمد.

او پرسید: " همیشه یکی رایگان بدید؟" جک خشمگین شد. او پاسخ داد: "تو هیچ پولی نداری!" " خواهش می‌کنم، چند روز است که شام نخورده‌ام."

کشاورز فریاد زد: "نه". یتیم آهی کشید. با این وجود، خانمی باردار این گفتگو را شنید و در مقابل جک ایستاد. گفت: "فقط یک گلابی بهش بده."

جک با بی‌شرمی گفت نه. در نهایت مردی یک گلابی برای دختر خرید. دختر به سرعت آن را خورد، اما دانه‌اش را نگه داشت. می‌خواست انتقام بگیرد. او به جک گفت: "راهی بلدم که می‌شود در یک روز هزاران گلابی بدست آورد. بهت نشون می‌دم چطور." او دختر را که گودالی می‌کند نگاه کرد. او دانه را در زمین گذاشت. و سپس خاک روی آن پاشید. دختر گفت: "با دقت نگاه کن" " در چند دقیقه، ساقه‌ای خواهد رویید. به یک درخت پر از گلابی تبدیل خواهد شد.

جک به خاک خیره شد، ولی هیچ اتفاقی نیفتاد. تنها چیزهایی که آنجا بود چندتا گل مینا بود. او دنبال دختر گشت اما او یواشکی در رفته بود. با ترس و اضطراب به گاری خود نگاه کرد. خالی بود!

او ناگهان متوجه شد که یتیم او را گول زده است. زمانی که جک منتظر روییدن درخت بود، مردم گلابی‌های او را از گاریش برده بودند. آنها وقتی میوه نرم را می‌خوردند، می‌خندیدند. کشاورز احساس شرمندگی کرد. این اتفاق به او آموخت که مهربان‌تر باشد.

**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ The orphan wanted the farmer to give her a pear.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ The farmer didn't feel shame about being unkind until after the incident.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ The people in the marketplace plotted to get revenge against the farmer.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ The girl sighed because she was tired of waiting for the tree to grow.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ The girl snuck away before the farmer could confront her.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ The orphan ate a large supper the night before.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. What object did the girl keep after she ate the pear?
  - a. The seed
  - b. The stem
  - c. A daisy
  - d. The cart
2. What was the dispute between the orphan and the farmer about?
  - a. The girl wanted a spare pear.
  - b. The farmer felt rage about the girl.
  - c. The girl sat on his bench.
  - d. The farmer's pears were too expensive.
3. What did the girl do immediately after she put the seed in the ground?
  - a. She asked the farmer to watch closely.
  - b. She ate the pear.
  - c. She spread the dirt over it.
  - d. She dug a hole.
4. What happened to the farmer's pears at the end of the story?
  - a. They were stolen by the crowd.
  - b. They were all sold.
  - c. They were given away.
  - d. They were taken by the girl.



adv.

**beneath**

[bi'ni:θ]

زیر، در زیر، پایین



- ❖ If something is beneath something else, it is under it.
- The largest part of an iceberg lies beneath the waterline.
- بزرگترین بخش کوه یخ زیر خط آب قرار دارد.

n.

**cub**

[kʌb]

توله



- ❖ A cub is a baby animal, such as a bear or lion.
- The lion cub was crying for its mother.

➤ توله شیر برای مادرش گریه می‌کرد.

n.

**dawn**

[dɔ:n]

سپیده دم، طلوع خورشید



- ❖ dawn is the time of day when the sun rises.
- At dawn, the sun gently rose over the farm.

➤ در سپیده‌دم، خورشید به آرامی بر فراز مزرعه طلوع کرد.

adj.

**dissatisfied**

[,dis'sætɪsfaɪd]

ناراضی، ناخشنود



- ❖ If you are dissatisfied, you are not happy with something.
- I was dissatisfied with their decision to work on Sunday.

➤ از تصمیم آنها برای کار در روز یکشنبه ناراضی بودم.





n.

**ease**

[i:z]

آسانی، سهولت



❖ When something is done with ease, it is not hard to do.

➤ The monkey climbed the tree with ease.

➤ میمون به آسانی از درخت بالا رفت.

adj.

**evident**

['evid(ə)nt]

واضح، آشکار



❖ When something is evident, it is easy to see or understand.

➤ It was evident from the look on his face that he was unhappy.

➤ از ظاهر صورتش واضح بود که ناراحت است.

n.

**hail**

[heɪl]

تگرگ



❖ hail is ice that falls from the sky when rain freezes.

➤ The hail from the storm was the size of golf balls.

➤ تگرگ در طوفان به اندازه توپ گلف بود.

v.

**howl**

[haʊl]

زوزه کشیدن



❖ To howl means to make a long, loud sound like a wolf or a dog.

➤ The wolf howled at the moon.

➤ گرگ به سوی ماه زوزه کشید.



v.

leap

[li:p]

جهیدن، پریدن

- ❖ To leap means to jump a long distance.
- He had to leap over the gap to reach the other side of the hill.
- او باید برای رفتن به آن سوی تپه از شکاف می‌پرید.

adj.

magnificent [mæg'nɪfɪs(ə)nt]

مجلل، شکوهمند، پرشکوه



- ❖ When something is magnificent, it is beautiful and grand.
- The man gave his wife a pair of magnificent diamond earrings.
- مرد یک جفت گوشواره الماس مجلل به همسرش داد.

n.

necessity

[nə'sesəti]

نیاز، ضرورت



- ❖ A necessity is something that is needed.
- Fresh water is a necessity for life.
- آب تازه برای زندگی ضروری است.

n.

outcome

['aʊtkʌm]

نتیجه، پیامد



- ❖ An outcome is the end of an action or event.
- The outcome of his latest business plan was a complete failure.
- نتیجه آخرین طرح تجاری او شکست کامل بود.



n.

pile

[paɪl]

مقدار زیاد، یک عالمه



- ❖ A pile is a large group of things on top of one another.
- The pile of cups was beginning to tilt.

➤ تعداد زیاد فنجان‌ها بر روی هم کم‌کم کج شدند.

adj.

profound

[prə'faʊnd]

عمیق، ژرف، اساسی



- ❖ When something is profound, it is very intelligent.
  - For a little boy, Jeremy has some profound thoughts.
- جرمی با اینکه پسر کوچکی است اما تفکرات ژرفی دارد.

v.

seize

[si:z]

محکم گرفتن، قاپیدن



- ❖ To seize something means to grab it quickly or strongly.
  - The man seized as much money as he could before anyone could see him.
- مرد قبل از اینکه کسی بتواند او را ببیند، تا توانست پول قاپید.

n.

squeeze

[skwi:z]

فشاردادن، فشردن



- ❖ To squeeze something means to press it together and hold it tightly.
- When Clara saw her cat, she gave it a big squeeze.

➤ وقتی کلارا گربه‌اش را دید، او را محکم فشرد.





adj.

**supreme**

[s(j)u:'pri:m]

عالی، کامل

- ❖ When something is supreme, it is the highest or best.
- The supreme officer was in charge of keeping the citizens calm.
- افسر ارشد وظیفه حفظ آرامش شهروندان را به عهده داشت.



adj.

**terrific**

[tə'rifɪk]

عالی، محشر، فوق العاده

- ❖ When something is terrific, it is very good.
- My youngest daughter is a terrific painter.
- دختر کوچکم یک نقاش فوق العاده است.



n.

**trait**

[tret], [trei]

ویژگی، خصوصیت

- ❖ A trait is part of someone's personality.
- One trait of Salvador's personality is his cheerfulness.
- یک ویژگی شخصیتی سالوادور نشاط او است.



adj.

**vital**

['vait(ə)l]

حیاتی، جدی

- ❖ When something is vital, it is necessary for life.
- The heart is a vital organ.
- قلب یک عضو حیاتی است.

## Exercise 1

Choose the right word for the given definition.

- a part of one's personality  
a. trait                      b. profound                      c. necessity                      d. magnificent
- to press together  
a. vital                      b. squeeze                      c. terrific                      d. trait
- to jump a long distance  
a. squeeze                      b. seize                      c. howl                      d. leap
- frozen rain  
a. hail                      b. dissatisfied                      c. outcome                      d. dawn
- the condition of being with little or no problem  
a. dawn                      b. beneath                      c. ease                      d. pile

## Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- The princess looked beautiful and grand in her new dress.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- It is a needed thing to hold your breath when swimming under water.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The tribe honored their highest and best chief.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The runner was pleased with the end of the race.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The answer to this problem is easy to understand.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- My father will be unhappy if I do not clean my bedroom.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The police grab criminals that try to run away.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The early news program comes on TV at the time the sun rises.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- We covered the trap with a large group of sticks and grass.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The lion protected her baby animal from the hunters.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Choose the answer that best fits the question.**

1. If you complete a task with no problem, then it was done with what?
  - a. Necessity
  - b. Dawn
  - c. Ease
  - d. Leap
2. Which of the following is the one that a police officer would seize?
  - a. A mechanic
  - b. A criminal
  - c. A cold
  - d. A teacher
3. How would you describe something magnificent?
  - a. Very lovely
  - b. Small and dirty
  - c. Having a bad smell
  - d. Extremely smart
4. A leap is most similar to which of the following?
  - a. Sprint
  - b. Jump
  - c. Squat
  - d. Climb
5. Which of these would be considered profound?
  - a. A puddle on the ground
  - b. A blank sheet of paper
  - c. New shoes
  - d. A great idea
6. If you squeeze someone, it may mean what?
  - a. You like them.
  - b. You are hungry.
  - c. You are very tired.
  - d. You want to go home.
7. If you are beneath your friend, then where is he?
  - a. He's above me.
  - b. He's below me.
  - c. He's beside me.
  - d. He's nowhere to be found.
8. What kind of animal will usually howl?
  - a. A duck
  - b. A parrot
  - c. An ostrich
  - d. A wolf
9. Which is the most vital for human survival?
  - a. Food
  - b. Water
  - c. A heart
  - d. Money
10. What is something that would make you feel terrific?
  - a. Making a friend happy
  - b. Being late for class
  - c. Pushing someone down
  - d. Breaking your finger



# Little Wolf and Mother Wolf

Mother Wolf was a **magnificent** animal. She had all the **traits** of a **terrific** hunter. She was very strong and fast. She knew how to hide and how to **seize** prey. Mother Wolf was the forest's **supreme** creature. Her skills were **evident** to all the other animals.

Mother Wolf lived in a den **beneath** a tree with her **cub**, Little Wolf. At **dawn**, Little Wolf and Mother Wolf were eating breakfast. Little Wolf looked sad. Mother Wolf said, "What is wrong, my cub?"

Little Wolf said, "I want to be big like you. You can run and **leap** better than anyone. You can **howl** so loudly. Being big is a **necessity**, and I am so small."

Mother Wolf said, "Don't be **dissatisfied** with your size. Being small can be very helpful sometimes."

Just then, rain and **hail** began to fall. The tree was hit by lightning. It fell on the wolves' den. Little Wolf was scared. The wolves knew that escaping the den was **vital**. Mother Wolf said, "Little Wolf, I cannot move the heavy **pile** of branches. But you can escape with **ease**. You can get out and find help!"

Little Wolf crawled out of the den and called all the large animals for help. They went to the den and pulled away the branches. Mother Wolf came out and said, "Thank you Little Wolf! You saved my life!" She softly **squeezed** Little Wolf and kissed her.

Little Wolf smiled. She said, "Mother, this **outcome** has taught me a **profound** lesson. Even though I'm small, I'm still important."



## گرگ کوچک و گرگ مادر

گرگ مادر یک حیوان با عظمت و باشکوه بود. تمامی خصوصیات یک شکارچی عالی را داشت. او بسیار نیرومند و سریع بود. می‌دانست چگونه مخفی شود و شکار را بقاید. گرگ مادر موجود برتر جنگل بود. مهارت‌های او برای تمامی حیوانات دیگر روشن بود.

گرگ مادر با تولد خود، گرگ کوچک، در لانه‌ای زیر یک درخت زندگی می‌کرد. به هنگام سپیده دم، گرگ کوچک و گرگ مادر داشتند صبحانه می‌خوردند. گرگ کوچک ناراحت به نظر می‌رسید. گرگ مادر گفت: "مشکل چیه، توله‌ام؟"

گرگ کوچک گفت: "می‌خوام مثل تو بزرگ باشم. تو از هر کسی بهتر می‌تونی بدوی و بپری. تو خیلی بلند می‌تونی زوزه بکشی. بزرگ بودن ضروریه و من خیلی کوچیک هستم."

گرگ مادر گفت: "از اندازه‌ات ناراضی نباش. کوچیک بودن بعضی وقتها می‌تونه خیلی مفید باشه." دقیقاً همون موقع، باران و تگرگ شروع به باریدن کرد. درخت توسط رعد و برق مورد اصابت قرار گرفت. و روی لانه گرگ‌ها افتاد. گرگ کوچک ترسیده بود.

گرگ‌ها می‌دانستند که فرار از لانه حیاتی بود. گرگ مادر گفت: "گرگ کوچک، من نمی‌تونم دسته سنگین شاخه‌ها را جابجا کنم. اما تو می‌تونی به راحتی در بری. می‌تونی بری بیرون و کمک پیدا کنی!"

گرگ کوچک از لانه به بیرون خزید و تمام حیوانات بزرگ را برای کمک خبر کرد. آنها به لانه رفتند و شاخه‌ها را کنار زدند. گرگ مادر بیرون آمد و گفت: "مرسی گرگ کوچک! تو جون منو نجات دادی!" به آرامی گرگ کوچک را به خود فشرد و او را بوسید.

گرگ کوچک لبخند زد. او گفت: "مادر، این پیامد درس عمیقی به من یاد داد. اگر چه کوچیکم اما هنوزم مهم هستم."

# Reading Comprehension

20

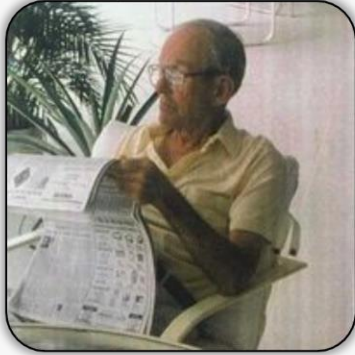
## PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Mother Wolf was a magnificent animal.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ Little Wolf knew how to seize prey.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ Mother Wolf couldn't move the pile of branches.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ Mother Wolf made a den inside of a tree.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ The large animals pulled the branches away.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ Little Wolf saved Mother Wolf's life.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## PART B Answer the questions.

1. Which is NOT a trait of a terrific hunter like Mother Wolf?
  - a. Being strong
  - b. Being small
  - c. Being fast
  - d. Being big
2. Little Wolf was scared because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. Mother Wolf became ill
  - b. the snow filled the ground
  - c. a tree fell on the den
  - d. a hunter was chasing them
3. Why did Little Wolf feel sad?
  - a. She could leap like her mother.
  - b. She wanted to howl at the animals.
  - c. She was dissatisfied with her mother.
  - d. She thought she was useless.
4. According to the reading, why did Mother Wolf squeeze her cub?
  - a. Because Little Wolf was laughing
  - b. Because Little Wolf smiled
  - c. Because Little Wolf was hurt
  - d. Because Little Wolf saved her





adj.

**accustomed** [ə'kʌstəmd]

عادت کرده، خوگرفته

- ❖ When you become accustomed to something, you are in the habit of it.
- Grandfather is accustomed to reading the newspaper every morning.
- پدربزرگ عادت دارد هر روز صبح روزنامه بخواند.



v.

**affirm** [ə'fɜ:m]

تایید کردن، تصدیق کردن

- ❖ To affirm is to say that something is true.
- Using a graph, Malcolm affirmed the success of the company.
- با استفاده از نمودار، مالکوم موفقیت شرکت را تایید کرد.



adj.

**astonished** [ə'stɒnɪʃ]

حیرت زده، شگفت زده، متعجب

- ❖ If someone is astonished, they are very surprised or shocked.
- I was astonished when he pulled the live rabbit out of his hat.
- وقتی خرگوش زنده را از کلاهش بیرون کشید حیرت زده شدم.



v.

**bang** [bæŋ]

کوبیدن

- ❖ To bang is to hit something to make a noise.
- The drummer banged on his drum as he marched in the parade.
- طبل زن در حالیکه در رژه قدمرو می رفت بر روی طبلش می کوبید.



n.

clan

[klæn]

طایفه، ایل



- ❖ A clan is a group of relatives or friends.
- The Lee clan meets every year to celebrate the New Year.
- طایفه لی هر سال برای جشن سال نو همدیگر را ملاقات می‌کنند.

adj.

dim

[dɪm]

کم نور، تاریک



- ❖ When something is dim, it does not give out much light.
- Working in a dim room is bad for your eyes.
- کارکردن در اتاق کم‌نور برای چشم‌های شما بد است.

n.

emphasis

['emfəsis]

تاکید



- ❖ emphasis is special attention or importance.
- The students put special emphasis on chapter 4 because it will be on test.
- دانش‌آموزان تاکید خاصی بر روی فصل 4 می‌کنند چون در امتحان می‌آید.

n.

fable

['feɪbl]

حکایت، داستان (اخلاقی)



- ❖ A fable is a short story that teaches a lesson.
- In the fable about the tortoise and the hare, the lesson is consistency.
- داستان لاک‌پشت و خرگوش درس پایداری می‌دهد.



n.

**feast**

[fi:st]

مهمانی، ضیافت



- ❖ A feast is a large meal for many people.
- At Thanksgiving, I enjoy a wonderful feast with my family.
- در روز شکرگزاری، از مهمانی عالی با خانوادهام لذت می‌برم.

v.

**glow**

[gləʊ]

نوردادن، درخشیدن



- ❖ To glow is to make a soft light.
- The small flame glowed softly.
- شعله کوچک به آرامی می‌درخشد.

adj.

**hollow**

['hɒləʊ]

توخالی، تهی



- ❖ When something is hollow, it has an empty space inside.
- Straws are hollow, so liquid can flow through them.
- نی‌ها توخالی هستند، پس مایع از درون آنها عبور می‌کند.

n.

**instinct**

['ɪn(t)stɪŋkt]

غریزه



- ❖ instinct is the natural way that people behave without thinking about it.
- Cats hunt mice because of instinct.
- گربه‌ها از روی غریزه موش‌ها را شکار می‌کنند.





n.

**joint**

[dʒɔɪnt]

مفصل



- ❖ A joint is a place of the body where the bones meet, such as the knee.
- Two important bones in your leg meet at a joint in your knee.
- دو استخوان مهم در پای شما در مفصل زانو به هم می‌رسند.

v.

**leak**

[li:k]

چکه کردن، نشت کردن



- ❖ To leak is to let a liquid or gas pass through a flaw.
- The pipe leaks from many places.

➤ لوله از چند جا نشت دارد.

n.

**physician**

[fɪ'zɪʃ(ə)n]

پزشک، دکتر



- ❖ A physician is a doctor.
- The physician said I would feel better if I took my medicine.
- دکتر گفت اگر داروی خود را بخورم بهتر می‌شوم.

n.

**sacrifice**

['sækrɪfaɪs]

قربانی کردن، فدا کردن



- ❖ To sacrifice something valuable is to give it up to get something else.
- Her parents sacrificed a lot of money in order for her to go to college.
- والدین او پول زیادی را فدا کردند تا او به دانشگاه برود.



adj.

**stiff**

[stɪf]

سفت، سخت



- ❖ When something is stiff, it is hard to move.
- The bird was standing on the tree's stiff branch.

➤ پرنده بر روی شاخه خشک درخت ایستاده بود.

v.

**stroke**

[strəʊk]

نوازش کردن، ناز کردن



- ❖ To stroke is to move a hand over something or someone.
- She stroked her cheek to see if there was something on it.

➤ گونه او را نوازش کرد تا ببیند آیا چیزی روی آن است.

adj.

**tragic**

['trædʒɪk((ə)l)]

غم‌انگیز، جانگداز



- ❖ When something is tragic, it is connected with death and suffering.
- The airplane crashed in a tragic accident.

➤ هواپیما در یک سانحه جانگداز سقوط کرد.

n.

**tune**

[t(j)u:n], [tʃu:n]

آهنگ، آواز، نغمه



- ❖ A tune is a song.
- The students played a familiar tune for the audience.

➤ دانش‌آموزان آهنگ آشنایی را برای حضار نواختند.

## Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. stroke  
a. to surprise      b. to move a hand      c. a light      d. to speak
2. sacrifice  
a. to give up      b. to allow      c. to cry      d. to say
3. joint  
a. very sad      b. a large meal      c. a short story      d. where two bones meet
4. emphasis  
a. family      b. a song      c. a doctor      d. special attention
5. hollow  
a. natural      b. cannot move      c. to connect      d. empty

## Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. She avoided walking in low-light areas.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Since she's lived in hot places all her life, she's used to warm weather.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The holes in the old pipes let water pass through onto the bathroom floor.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Her back felt hard to move after she slept on the floor.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. He was happy to go home and see the group of family and friends.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The very shocked crowd watched as the magician performed his tricks.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The school served a large meal in honor of the new principal.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. The only thing that I could see in the dark night was my flashlight making light.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. It was a very sad event when his parents passed away in the accident.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Her natural behavior told her to leave the room as soon as possible.  
\_\_\_\_\_



## Choose the word that is a better fit for each blank.

1. fable / astonished

The \_\_\_\_\_ was about a young boy with magic powers. At first nobody believed him, but everyone was \_\_\_\_\_ when he made a cat disappear.

2. instincts / banged

After hearing the bad news, she \_\_\_\_\_ her fist on the table in anger. Things would go wrong, her \_\_\_\_\_ told her.

3. accustomed / feast

Though the food was good, he felt sick after the \_\_\_\_\_. He just wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ to eating so much at one time.

4. joint / physician

The \_\_\_\_\_ stretched out my arm, looking at my elbow. He wanted to make sure that my pain wasn't a problem with the \_\_\_\_\_.

5. affirm / emphasis

The university placed a special \_\_\_\_\_ on student safety. They wanted to \_\_\_\_\_ that they were interested in protecting students.

6. stiff / hollow

He wanted to find out where his sister went after school, so he hid in a \_\_\_\_\_ tree in the schoolyard. However, when he came out, he felt \_\_\_\_\_ all over.

7. clan / tunes

The entire \_\_\_\_\_ was excited about her wedding. While they drove to the church, they sang happy \_\_\_\_\_.

8. dim / stroked

In the \_\_\_\_\_ light, it was hard to find the earring she'd dropped on the floor. She \_\_\_\_\_ the ground until she finally felt it.

9. tragic / sacrifices

The boy suffered from a \_\_\_\_\_ illness. Still, his family made \_\_\_\_\_ to make sure he was always comfortable.

10. leak / glowing

He shut the door to make sure that no light could \_\_\_\_\_ into the room. However, he could still see the moon \_\_\_\_\_ outside of his window.

# The Old Man with a Bump

An old man had a large bump on his face. He went to the best **physician** in town. He gave the old man **tragic** news: "I can't do anything. You'll have to get **accustomed** to it."

One day, the old man went into the forest. Suddenly, the light became **dim**. It was going to rain. So he found a **hollow** tree to sit under. It **leaked** a little, but there was no other place he could wait.

When the rain stopped, his **joints** felt **stiff** from sitting. Suddenly, he heard a **tune** coming from far away. Many **fables** said monsters lived in the forest. No one could **affirm** that the stories were true, though. Still, his **instincts** told him that there was something out there. He walked farther into the forest. Then he saw a fire **glowing**. He was **astonished** to see a **clan** of monsters. They were having a great **feast** and **banging** on drums.

He stood behind a tree, spying on them. Then the leader asked, "Who's the best dancer here?"

"Me!" the man yelled, coming from behind the tree. He started to dance. When he was finished, the leader said, "I want you to dance every night. In order to make sure you return, I'm going to keep something you love."

"Please don't take my bump," he begged. "I can't **sacrifice** it. It's good luck!" He exclaimed, pointing at it for **emphasis**.

The monsters agreed that they had to take his bump. After they did, the man **stroked** his face to make sure it was gone. He had tricked them! He never went back, and he never had to worry about his bump again.



## مردی پیر با یک برآمدگی

یک پیرمرد برآمدگی بزرگی روی صورت خود داشت. او پیش بهترین پزشک شهر رفت. او به پیرمرد خبری ناگوار داد: "نمی‌تونم کاری بکنم. باید بهش عادت کنی."

یک روز، مرد پیر به داخل جنگل رفت. ناگهان، روشنایی ضعیف شد. قرار بود باران ببارد. بنابراین او یک درخت توخالی پیدا کرد و زیرش نشست. کمی آب می‌داد، ولی جای دیگری برای منتظر ماندن نبود.

وقتی که باران متوقف شد، مفصل‌هایش به خاطر نشستن خشک شده بودند. یکدفعه، صدای آهنگی که از دوردست می‌آمد را شنید. افسانه‌های زیادی می‌گفتند که در آن جنگل هیولاهایی زندگی می‌کنند. هرچند، هیچ کس نمی‌توانست تایید کند که آن داستان‌ها حقیقت دارند.

هنوز هم، غریزه‌اش به او گفت که چیزی آن بیرون است. او بیشتر وارد جنگل شد. سپس آتشی را دید که می‌تابید. او از دیدن دسته‌ای از هیولاها تعجب کرد. آنها ضیافتی عالی داشتند و روی طبل‌ها می‌کوبیدند.

او پشت یک درخت ایستاد و آنها را می‌پایید. بعد رهبر هیولاها پرسید: "چه کسی بهترین رقص اینجاست؟" مرد در حالی که از پشت درخت بیرون می‌آمد، داد زد: "من" او شروع به رقصیدن کرد. وقتی که کارش تمام شد، رهبر هیولاها گفت: "می‌خواهم که تو هر شب برقصی. برای اینکه مطمئن بشوم که برخواهی گشت، چیزی که دوست داری را نزد خود نگه می‌دارم."

مرد التماس کرد: "خواهش می‌کنم برآمدگی من رو نگیرید." در حالی که برای تلکید به آن اشاره می‌کرد داد زد: "نمی‌توانم فداش کنم. خوش‌شانسی میاره!" هیولاها موافقت کردند که باید برآمدگی او را بگیرند. بعد از آن کار، مرد روی چهره خود دستی کشید که مطمئن شود برآمدگی رفته است.

آنها را فریب داده بود! او هیچوقت برنگشت و هرگز دوباره مجبور نبود نگران برآمدگی‌اش باشد.



**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ The physician told the old man there was nothing he could do.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_ The old man waited in the hollow tree even though it leaked a little.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_ The old man's joints were stiff from walking in the forest.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_ The old man's instincts told him to return home immediately.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_ The man danced for the clan of monsters.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. \_\_\_ The monsters took away the man's tragic bump.

\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. What advice did the doctor give the old man?

- a. To bang
- b. To make
- c. To sacrifice
- d. To get

2. Why did the man have to wait inside a hollow tree?

- a. The light became dim.
- b. It began to rain.
- c. He was hiding from monsters.
- d. His joints hurt.

3. Why did the old man come out from behind the tree?

- a. To run away
- b. To eat
- c. To dance
- d. To play music

4. Why does the old man stroke his face at the end of the story?

- a. To astonish the monsters
- b. To make sure the bump is gone
- c. For emphasis
- d. To affirm that the bump is there



v.

**accommodate** [ə'kɒmədeɪt]

جا دادن، منزل دادن



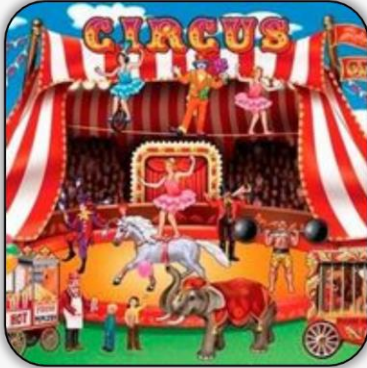
- ❖ To accommodate is to have enough room.
- The meeting room can accommodate nine people.

➤ اتاق جلسه می‌تواند نه نفر را در خود جای دهد.

n.

**circus** ['sɜ:kəs]

سیرک



- ❖ A circus is a traveling show with animals and people.
- I like to go to the circus to see the animals do tricks.

➤ دوست دارم به سیرک بروم تا حیواناتی را که حقه می‌زنند ببینم.

v.

**coincide** [ˌkəʊɪn'saɪd]

همزمان بودن، منطبق شدن، مقارن بودن



- ❖ If two things coincide, they happen at the same time.
- My birthday coincides with Christmas.

➤ تولد من با کریسمس همزمان است.

v.

**commission** [kə'mɪʃ(ə)n]

ماموریت دادن، گماشتن، مامور کردن



- ❖ To commission someone to do something is to pay them to do it.
- The artist was commissioned to create a picture.

➤ هنرمند مامور شد تا تصویری را خلق کند.



n.

dose

[dəʊs]

مقدار (دارو)، دوز



- ❖ A dose is a certain amount of medicine that you take at one time.
- My mother gave me a dose of medicine before I went to bed.
- مادرم قبل از اینکه بخوابم مقداری دارو به من داد.

v.

dye

[dai]

رنگ کردن (مو)



- ❖ To dye something is to make it a certain color by using a special chemical.
- Valery got her hair dyed at the salon yesterday.
- دیروز والری در سالن موی خود را رنگ کرد.

n.

extent

[ɪk'stɛnt]

اندازه، حد



- ❖ The extent of something is how large, important, or serious it is.
- He ate to such an extent that he became overweight.
- او آنقدر خورد تا چاق شد.

n.

gender

['dʒɛndə]

جنسیت



- ❖ gender is a category that describes being either a boy or a girl.
- Do you know the gender of her new baby?

➤ آیا جنسیت نوزاد او را می‌دانید؟



n.

**headline**

['hedlɪn]

تیتر، عنوان



- ❖ A headline is the title of a newspaper story.
- The headline on the front page was about the economy.
- عنوان صفحه اول درباره اقتصاد بود.

adj.

**informal**

[ɪn'fɔ:m(ə)]

غیررسمی



- ❖ When something is informal, it is not official.
- They had an informal meeting to talk about their experiences.
- آنها در یک جلسه غیررسمی درباره تجربیاتشان سوال کردند.

v.

**inquire**

[ɪn'kwaɪə]

پرسیدن، سوال کردن



- ❖ To inquire about something is to ask about it.
- Dad called to inquire about the price of tickets for the show.
- بابا زنگ زد و درباره قیمت بلیط‌های نمایش سوال کرد.

n.

**messenger**

['mes(ə)nɪdʒə]

نامه‌رسان، پیک



- ❖ A messenger is one who carries information from one place to another.
- The messenger delivered an important document to the office.
- نامه‌رسان سند مهمی را به اداره تحویل داد.



v.

peer

[pɪə]

با دقت نگاه کردن ، زل زدن



- ❖ To peer at something is to watch it carefully.
- She peered at people through the window.

➤ او از پنجره به مردم نگاه کرد.

n.

portrait

['pɔ:trɪt], [-eɪt]

عکس پرتره، تصویر شخص



- ❖ A portrait is a painting or photograph of someone.
  - I saw many religious portraits when I went to the museum.
- وقتی به موزه رفتم، پرتره‌های مذهبی زیادی دیدم.

v.

pose

[pəʊz]

ژست گرفتن



- ❖ To pose is to stay in one place without moving.
- The kids and their dog posed for a picture.

➤ بچه‌ها و سگ‌شان برای گرفتن عکس ژست گرفتند.

n.

ranch

[rɑ:nʃ]

مزرعه‌ی بزرگ (با ساختمان و غیره)



- ❖ A ranch is a large farm where animals are kept.
- My uncle has many horses on his ranch.

➤ عموی من اسب‌های زیادی در مزرعه بزرگش دارد.



v.

**steer**

[stiə]

راندن، هدایت کردن



❖ To steer something is to control where it goes.

➤ He steered the go-cart around the track.

➤ او ماشین مسابقه را در پیچ مسیر راند.

n.

**stripe**

[straip]

خط، راه راه



❖ A stripe is a thick line.

➤ The flag of the United States has red and white stripes.

➤ پرچم ایالات متحده خط‌های قرمز و سفید دارد.

adj.

**tame**

[teim]

رام (حیوان)، اهلی



❖ When an animal is tame, it is not afraid to be near people.

➤ The tame bird rested on his hand.

➤ پرنده اهلی روی دست او استراحت کرد.

v.

**tempt**

[tempt]

وسوسه کردن



❖ To tempt people is to offer them something they want but shouldn't have.

➤ I wasn't hungry, but she tempted me with a piece of my favorite cake.

➤ گرسنه نبودم، اما او با یک تکه از کیک مورد علاقه‌ام من را وسوسه کرد.



# Exercise 1

## PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to have enough room  
a. accommodate    b. circus    c. tame    d. steer
- to change the color of something  
a. tempt    b. dye    c. stripe    d. dose
- A category of being either a boy or a girl  
a. wipe    b. extent    c. informal    d. gender
- the title of a newspaper story  
a. pose    b. headline    c. ranch    d. inquire
- to pay someone to do something  
a. portrait    b. commission    c. peer    d. messenger

## PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- inquire  
a. to pay someone for something    b. to ask about something  
c. to make someone want something    d. not wild
- steer  
a. a picture of someone    b. to stay in one position  
c. a traveling show    d. to control the direction of a car
- stripe  
a. a line    b. a person who carries news  
c. an amount of medicine    d. describes being either a boy or a girl
- extent  
a. to have room for    b. how much  
c. to change color    d. a place with many animals
- coincide  
a. to happen at the same time    b. not official  
c. to watch carefully    d. the title of a news story

**Choose the word that is a better fit for each blank.****1. inquired / dose**

The patient \_\_\_\_\_ if the doctor could help his shoulder pain. The doctor gave him a \_\_\_\_\_ of medication that would relieve the pain.

**2. pose / peered**

The photographer \_\_\_\_\_ through the camera, but the picture didn't seem right. So he asked the people to \_\_\_\_\_ differently.

**3. portrait / commissioned**

Her grandfather gave her a \_\_\_\_\_ that was painted when he was a boy. Her grandfather's family had \_\_\_\_\_ a famous artist to do it.

**4. accommodate / coincided**

The day of the wedding \_\_\_\_\_ with an important baseball game. As a result, the hotels couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the extra guests.

**5. circus / dyed**

The performers at the \_\_\_\_\_ had clothing that was \_\_\_\_\_ funny colors.

**6. headline / extent**

They didn't understand the \_\_\_\_\_ of the damage until they saw the \_\_\_\_\_ that said that thousands of people had lost their homes in the storm.

**7. messenger / stripe**

The \_\_\_\_\_ carried the notes in a bag that had a long green \_\_\_\_\_ on the side.

**8. ranch / informal**

The owner of the \_\_\_\_\_ had an \_\_\_\_\_ meeting with his employees to talk to them about the recent problems.

**9. steering / gender**

I couldn't tell the \_\_\_\_\_ of the person \_\_\_\_\_ the car because it was dark outside.

**10. tame / tempted**

The trainer \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ tiger with a treat, but the animal remained in his place.



# The Circus

Ben was unhappy. He lived on a **ranch** near a small town, and he didn't have many friends. Then one day a **messenger** came to the ranch. He showed the **headline** in the town newspaper. The **circus** was coming to the town. It even **coincided** with Ben's birthday!

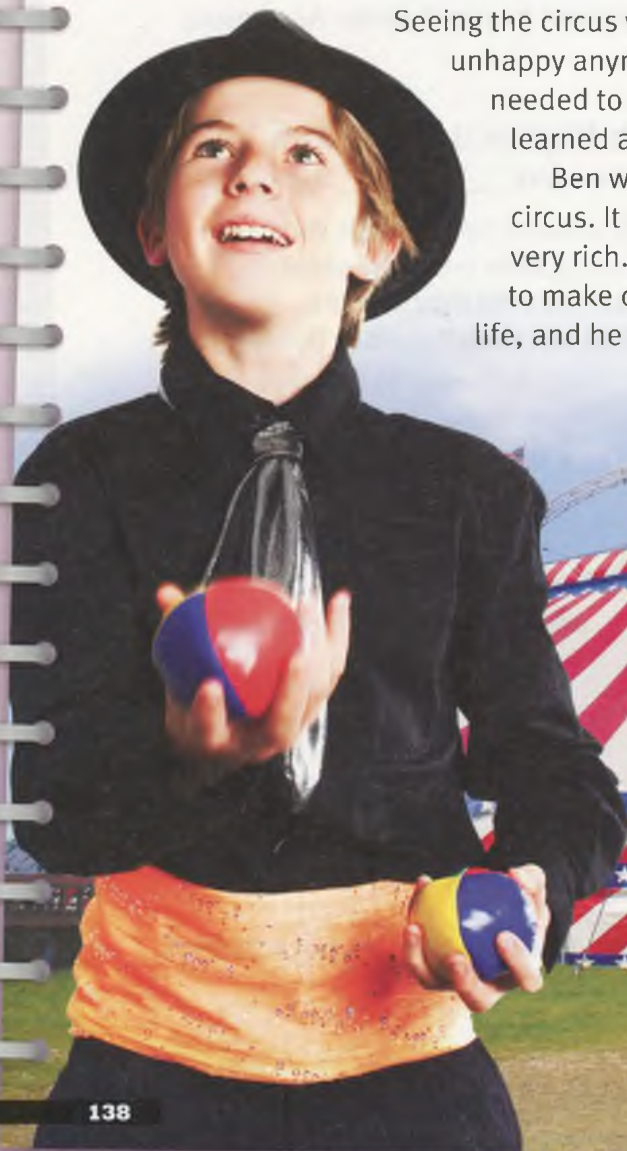
Ben was very excited as his father **steered** the car through the town. The circus couldn't **accommodate** all the people who wanted to see the show, but Ben had a ticket.

Ben **peered** at the activity around him. He watched people of both **genders** dance all around. They wore funny costumes, and their hair was **dyed** many different colors. Also, **tame** tigers with **stripes** on their fur did tricks. Outside, people could **commission** an **informal portrait**. They **posed** in front of a funny picture while an artist quickly drew them. Ben couldn't believe it. He was happier than he had ever been before.

That day, Ben knew what he wanted to do. He loved the circus to such an **extent** that he wanted to have his own circus when he grew older.

Seeing the circus was like a **dose** of medicine for him. He wasn't unhappy anymore. He felt special. He **inquired** about what he needed to do to have his own circus. He studied hard and learned about business.

Ben worked very hard, and one day, he had his own circus. It was a great circus. People told him that he could be very rich. But he wasn't **tempted** by money. He just wanted to make children happy. He knew the circus had changed his life, and he wanted to do the same thing for others.





## سیرک

بن ناراحت بود. در مزرعه بزرگی در نزدیکی شهری کوچک زندگی می‌کرد، و دوستان زیادی نداشت. سپس یک روز یک پیام‌رسان به مزرعه آمد. او سرتیتر روزنامه محلی را نشان داد.

سیرک داشت به شهر می‌آمد. این اتفاق حتی با تولد بن همزمان شده بود. وقتی که پدرش ماشین را در شهر می‌راند، بن خیلی هیجان زده بود. سیرک نمی‌توانست تمام افرادی که می‌خواستند نمایش را ببینند جا فراهم کند، اما بن یک بلیت داشت.

بن با دقت به فعالیت‌های پیرامون خود نگاه کرد. آدم‌هایی از زن و مرد (هر دو جنس) را دید که می‌رقصیدند. لباس‌های بانمک پوشیده بودند و موهایشان با رنگ‌های مختلف رنگ شده بود. همینطور، بیرهای رام شده با خط‌هایی روی پوست خود شعبده بازی می‌کردند. بیرون، مردم می‌توانستند پرتله‌ای غیر رسمی سفارش بدهند.

مقابل یک تصویر بامزه می‌ایستادند در حالی که یک هنرمند به سرعت آنها را می‌کشید. برای بن غیر قابل باور بود. او خوشحال تر از همیشه بود. آن روز، بن متوجه شد که می‌خواهد چه کاره شود.

او سیرک را به حدی دوست داشت که می‌خواست وقتی بزرگ شد سیرک خودش را داشته باشد. دیدن سیرک مانند دوزی از دارو برای او بود. او دیگر ناراحت نبود. او احساس خاص بودن می‌کرد. پرس و جو کرد که برای داشتن سیرک خودش چه لازم دارد.

او سخت درس خواند و در مورد تجارت آموخت. بن سخت کار کرد، و یک روز، او سیرک خود را داشت. سیرک فوق‌العاده‌ای بود. مردم به او گفتند که می‌تواند خیلی پولدار شود. اما او با پول وسوسه نشد. او فقط می‌خواست بچه‌ها را خوشحال کند. می‌دانست که سیرک زندگی او را تغییر داده بود، و می‌خواست همین کار را برای دیگران انجام بدهد.

# Reading Comprehension

22

## PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Ben lived on a ranch near a small town.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ Ben was tempted by money when he had his own circus.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ The tigers had stripes and were tame.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ People with dyed hair of both genders danced all over the place.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ Ben learned about the circus from a television advertisement.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ Ben was commissioned to paint informal portraits of people posing in front of a funny picture.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## PART B Answer the questions.

1. Why did Ben like the circus to such an extent?
  - a. He could be very rich.
  - b. He inquired about getting his own circus.
  - c. It made him feel special.
  - d. He took a dose of special medicine.
2. What good news did the messenger bring?
  - a. The circus was coming.
  - b. Ice cream was free.
  - c. Good weather was coming.
  - d. A new movie was showing.
3. What did Ben's dad do on his birthday?
  - a. He tamed tigers.
  - b. He paid for Ben's portrait.
  - c. He taught Ben how to drive.
  - d. He steered around town looking for the circus.
4. Why wasn't Ben tempted by money?
  - a. His circus wasn't very good.
  - b. He was already very rich.
  - c. He wanted other kids to like him.
  - d. He only wanted to make people happy.



n.

**aborigine**

[,æbə'ri:dʒəɪ]

بومی استرالیا



- ❖ An aborigine is a native of Australia before Europeans lived there.
- The aborigines created beautiful artwork.

➤ بومیان استرالیا آثار هنری زیبایی خلق کرده‌اند.

v.

**ban**

[bæn]

قدغن کردن، ممنوع کردن



- ❖ To ban something is to not let people do it.
- Smoking is banned in this building.

➤ در این ساختمان سیگارکشیدن ممنوع است.

adj.

**cautious**

['kɔ:ʃəs]

مراقب، محتاط



- ❖ If you are cautious, you are careful in a dangerous situation.
- Be very cautious as you stack those boxes.

➤ وقتی جعبه‌ها را روی هم می‌چینید، خیلی احتیاط کنید.

v.

**confess**

[kən'fes]

اعتراف کردن، اقرار کردن



- ❖ To confess something is to say that you did it.
- He confessed that he was responsible for choosing the winning story.

➤ اعتراف کرد که مسئول انتخاب داستان برنده بوده‌است.



n.

**cottage**

['kɒtɪdʒ]

کلبه، خانه ییلاقی



- ❖ A cottage is a small, old house in the countryside.
- My aunt lives in a pretty cottage in the mountains.

➤ عمه من در کلبه زیبایی در کوهها زندگی می‌کند.

n.

**daytime**

['deɪtaɪm]

هنگام روز



- ❖ daytime is the time of the day when the sky is light.
- I only allowed my kids to play outside in the daytime.

➤ فقط به بچه‌هایم اجازه می‌دهم در طول روز خارج از خانه بازی کنند.

adj.

**desperate**

['desp(ə)rət]

نا امید، مأیوس



- ❖ If you are desperate, you will try anything to do or change something.
- I'm desperate to find a new job.

➤ از پیدا کردن شغل جدید مأیوس هستم.

v.

**fade**

[feɪd]

(در مورد رنگ پارچه و...) پریدن، کم‌رنگ شدن



- ❖ If something fades, it gets quieter or darker.
- The piece of cloth I found was old and faded.

➤ تکه پارچه‌ای که پیدا کردم قدیمی و رنگ‌پریده بود.



adj.

**fierce**

[fɪəs]

درنده، بی رحم

❖ If a person or animal is fierce, they are angry or violent.

➤ Wolves are fierce animals. Do not disturb them.

➤ گرگ‌ها حیواناتی درنده هستند. مزاحم آنها نشوید.

v.

**gamble**

['gæmbəl]

شرط‌بندی کردن، قمار کردن

❖ To gamble means to play a game that involves winning or losing money.

➤ Many people like to go to casinos to gamble.

➤ خیلی از مردم دوست دارند برای شرط‌بندی به قمارخانه‌ها بروند.



n.

**lawn**

[lɔ:n]

چمن، علفزار

❖ A lawn is an area covered in grass.

➤ My dad keeps the lawn in front of your house very neat.

➤ بابای من چمن جلوی خانه شما را خیلی مرتب نگه می‌دارد.

v.

**mow**

[maʊ]

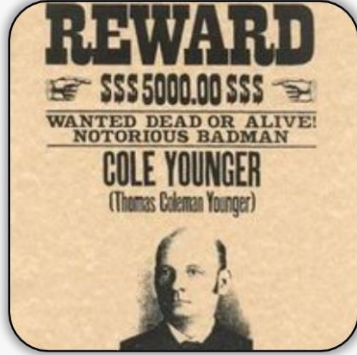
کوتاه کردن، چیدن

❖ To mow grass is to cut it to make it very short.

➤ I mow our lawn every weekend.

➤ من آخر هفته‌ها چمن خانه‌یمان را کوتاه می‌کنم.





n.

**outlaw**

['autlɔ:]

قانون شکن، یاغی

- ❖ An outlaw is a criminal who hides from the police.
- The police passed out posters of the outlaw to all the people.
- پلیس پوستر قانون شکن را بین همه مردم پخش کرد.



n.

**prospect**

['prɒspekt]

چشم انداز، آینده

- ❖ A prospect is a possibility that something will happen.
- He wakes up every morning with the prospect of having a good day.
- او هر روز صبح با چشم انداز داشتن یک روز خوب، از خواب بیدار می شود.



n.

**purse**

[pɜ:s]

کیف (زنانه)

- ❖ A purse is a bag where women keep money, makeup and keys.
- My sister likes to buy designer purses.
- خواهرم دوست دارد کیف های مارک دار بخرد.



n.

**rod**

[rɒd]

چوب، میله

- ❖ A rod is a thin stick made of wood or metal.
- I bought a new fishing rod to use while on vacation.
- او یک چوب ماهیگیری جدید خرید تا در تعطیلات استفاده کند.



adv.

**seldom**

['seldəm]

به ندرت، ندرتاً



- ❖ If something seldom happens, it doesn't happen very often.
- It seldom rains in southern Arizona.

➤ به ندرت در جنوب آریزونا باران می بارد.

v.

**shave**

[ʃeɪv]

صورت را اصلاح کردن، تراشیدن



- ❖ To shave means to cut the hairs on your face with a sharp tool.
- My father shaves his face every day because he doesn't want a beard.
- پدرم هر روز صورتش را اصلاح می کند چون ریش نمی خواهد.

adj.

**terrified**

['terəfaɪd]

وحشت زده



- ❖ If you are terrified, you are extremely scared.
- When I saw the ghost, I was absolutely terrified!

➤ وقتی روح را دیدم، کاملاً وحشت زده شدم.

n.

**wizard**

['wɪzəd]

جادوگر



- ❖ A wizard is a man who can do magic.
- The wizard made gold fall from the sky.

➤ جادوگر کاری کرد که از آسمان طلا بیارد.

## Exercise 1

### Choose the answer that best fits the question.

- Where are the Aborigines originally from?
  - Australia
  - Asia
  - South America
  - Europe
- If someone confesses, what do they do?
  - Go away
  - Make up a story
  - Tell the truth
  - Go back home
- Who often shaves their faces?
  - Children
  - Women
  - Babies
  - Men
- Which of the animals below is very fierce?
  - A mouse
  - A lion
  - A rabbit
  - A horse
- What do you need if you want to gamble?
  - A kitchen
  - Money
  - A book
  - Special boots
- What does it mean if you'll try anything to make a change?
  - You are fierce.
  - You will rob.
  - You are desperate.
  - You are terrified.
- What does a person with a lot of opportunities have?
  - Cottages
  - Purses
  - Prospects
  - Lawns
- What should a person be like if they are handling something dangerous?
  - Cautious
  - Mow
  - Wizard
  - Confess
- What might happen to someone who doesn't follow the rules of a library?
  - They may be sent to see an Aborigine.
  - They may be banned from the place.
  - They may have to mow the grass.
  - They may only be allowed to enter during the daytime.
- What happens to a cloth that is washed too many times?
  - Its colors begin to fade.
  - Its gambled.
  - Its outlawed.
  - Its seldom seen.

**Choose the word that is a better fit for each blank.****1. cottage / Aborigine**

The \_\_\_\_\_ lived in a large \_\_\_\_\_ that was far away from the rest of the population.

**2. prospects / outlaw**

The old \_\_\_\_\_ sat in his hideout trying to figure out what to do. He was out of \_\_\_\_\_ and thought he should just turn himself in to the sheriff.

**3. wizard / shaved**

The popular \_\_\_\_\_ was tired of not having any privacy. So he \_\_\_\_\_ his long beard and dyed his hair so no one would recognize him.

**4. gamble / cautious**

Be \_\_\_\_\_ when you \_\_\_\_\_ with large amounts of money.

**5. daytime / ban**

We decided to \_\_\_\_\_ all \_\_\_\_\_ fires because they could spread easily.

**6. lawn / faded**

Mr. Beck's once proud \_\_\_\_\_ has been overgrown and \_\_\_\_\_ since he moved away.

**7. desperate / purse**

The \_\_\_\_\_ thief stole the woman's \_\_\_\_\_ from the table.

**8. mow / fierce**

I had to \_\_\_\_\_ the lawn in the old field yesterday. As I did, I uncovered a small den of \_\_\_\_\_ raccoons.

**9. terrified / confess**

I was \_\_\_\_\_ by the thought of going to jail. So I knew that the right thing to do would be to \_\_\_\_\_ my crime to the authorities.

**10. seldom / rod**

My grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ lets anyone to use his favorite fishing \_\_\_\_\_. But since it was my birthday, he let me use it.



# Lazy Hans

Hans was lazy. He **seldom** helped his mother with anything. He didn't cook and he never **mowed** the **lawn**. He didn't even **shave**! He spent the **daytime gambling** with his mother's money. One day, his mother realized that her money was gone from her **purse**. "You're **banned** from my house!" she shouted. "Don't come back until you've learned your lesson!"

Hans went to live in the forest like an **outlaw**. But it was cold, and Hans couldn't find food. He went to a **cottage** to ask for a meal.

An **Aborigine** answered the door. "Can I stay here please?" Hans asked.

"You can stay if you work," the man replied.

Hans liked the **prospect** of food and warmth, so he agreed.

The man pointed to a field. "Take this **rod** and plant it over there. I am a **wizard**, and this magic rod will bring us food."

The field was far away. Hans knew it would be hard to walk there. So he just threw the rod behind the cottage and sat by the river. When daylight **faded**, he returned to the cottage and went to sleep.

The next morning, the old man looked very **fierce**. "You didn't take the rod to the field!" he shouted.

"No," **confessed** Hans, "it was too far!"

"Because of you we have nothing to eat!" replied the man.

Hans was **terrified** that the man would punish him. So he ran home. "Mama!" he cried, "I'm **desperate** to come back!" His mother was **cautious**.

"Do you promise to work?" she asked.

"Yes!" said Hans, "I'll never be lazy again!"



## هنس تنبل

هنس تنبل بود. او به ندرت در انجام کاری به مادرش کمک می‌کرد. آشپزی نمی‌کرد و هرگز چمن‌ها را نمی‌زد. حتی صورت خود را هم اصلاح نمی‌کرد! روز را به قمار کردن با پول مادرش می‌گذراند.

یک روز، مادر او متوجه شد که پولش از کیفش برداشته شده است. او داد زد: "تو از خونه من منع شدی! برنگرد تا وقتی که درس گرفته باشی!" هنس رفت تا همانند یک یاغی در جنگل زندگی کند. اما سرد بود و هنس نمی‌توانست غذا پیدا کند. او به یک کلبه رفت تا تقاضای غذا کند.

یک بومی در را باز کرد. هنس پرسید: "می‌تونم اینجا بمونم لطفا؟" مرد پاسخ داد: "اگر کار کنی می‌تونم بمونی." هنس چشم‌انداز غذا و گرما را دوست داشت، بنابراین قبول کرد. مرد به یک زمین اشاره کرد. "اینو بگیر و اونجا بکارش. من جادوگر هستم و این چوب جادویی برای ما غذا میاره."

آن زمین خیلی دور بود. هنس می‌دانست پیاده رفتن به آنجا سخت خواهد بود. بنابراین چوب را پشت کلبه پرت کرد و کنار رودخانه نشست. وقتی نور روز محو شد، به کلبه برگشت و خوابید.

صبح روز بعد، مرد پیر بسیار خشمگین به نظر می‌رسید. فریاد زد: "تو چوب رو به مزرعه نبردی!" هانس اعتراف کرد: "نه" "خیلی دور بود!" مرد پاسخ داد: "به خاطر تو چیزی برای خوردن نداریم." هنس ترسید که مرد او را مجازات کند. بنابراین به سمت خانه دوید.

گریه کنان گفت: "مامان شدیداً خواهان برگشتن به خانه هستم!" مادرش محتاط بود. او پرسید: "قول میدی که کار کنی؟" هنس گفت: "آره، دیگه هیچوقت تنبل نخواهم بود."

**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Hans gambled with money from his mother's purse.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ Hans went to the Aborigine's cottage because he liked the prospect of working.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ The old man in the cottage was an outlaw.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ When daylight faded, Hans went to sleep under a tree.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ Hans didn't eat anything at the wizard's cottage.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ The old man got very fierce when he realized Hans had been lazy.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. At the beginning of the story, what did Hans do during the daytime?
  - a. Gamble
  - b. Shave
  - c. Do domestic work
  - d. Mow the lawn
2. Why did Hans's mother ban him from her house?
  - a. He was lazy.
  - b. He wasn't good at gambling.
  - c. He couldn't farm.
  - d. He didn't listen to the wizard.
3. What did Hans confess to doing?
  - a. Eating all of the food
  - b. Throwing the rod behind the cottage
  - c. Sleeping in the field
  - d. Stealing his mother's money
4. How did Hans's mother feel when Hans returned home?
  - a. Desperate
  - b. Terrified
  - c. Fierce
  - d. Cautious



n.

**baggage**

['bæɡɪdʒ]

چمدان، اسباب سفر، توشه

- ❖ baggage is the set of bags that people take with them when they travel.
- I'm taking several pieces of baggage with me on vacation.
- می‌خواهم چند چمدان با خودم به سفر ببرم.



n.

**bulb**

[bʌlb]

لامپ

- ❖ A bulb is the glass part of an electric light.
- I had to change the light bulb in my bedroom.
- باید لامپ اتاق خوابم را عوض کنم.



n.

**bundle**

['bʌndl]

دسته، بسته

- ❖ A bundle is a number of things that are tied together.
- I was shocked when he showed me a bundle of money.
- وقتی یک دسته پول را به من نشان داد غافلگیر شدم.



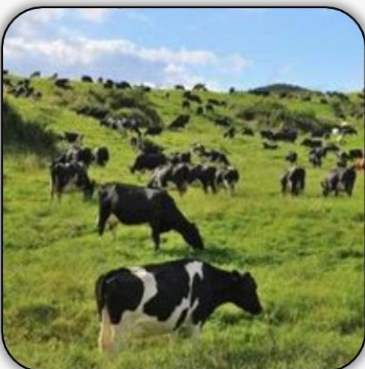
n.

**cattle**

['kætl]

گاوها

- ❖ cattle are cows and bulls, especially on a farm.
- The rancher's cattle were eating the grass in the field.
- گاوهای گاوچران در مزرعه علف می‌خوردند.





v.

**flee**

[fli:]

فرار کردن



❖ To flee means to run away from trouble or danger.

➤ The crowd of men tried to flee from the danger.

➤ انبوهی از مردها سعی کردند از خطر فرار کنند.

v.

**graze**

[greiz]

چریدن، علف خوردن



❖ To graze means to eat grass.

➤ The cows grazed in the field.

➤ گاوها در مزرعه چریدند.

n.

**greed**

[gri:d]

طمع، ولع



❖ greed is a desire to have more than the things that you need.

➤ She ate all the cookies out of her greed.

➤ او همه کلوچه‌ها را از روی طمع خورد.

n.

**herd**

[h3:d]

گله



❖ A herd is a large group of the same type of animals that live together.

➤ The herd of cows moved slowly across the ranch.

➤ گله گاوها به آرامی در مزرعه حرکت کردند.



v.

**initiate**

[i'niʃieɪt]

شروع کردن، آغاز کردن



- ❖ To initiate something means to start it.
- You have to turn the switch on to initiate the computer system.
- برای اینکه سیستم کامپیوتر شروع به کار کند باید کلید را بزنید.

n.

**lane**

[leɪn]

خیابان، کوچه



- ❖ A lane is a small road.
- The lane passes directly in front of our house.
- خیابان به طور مستقیم از جلوی خانه ما می‌گذرد.

n.

**nerve**

[nɜ:v]

جرات، جسارت، شهامت



- ❖ nerve is bravery or the belief that you can do something.
- He has the nerve to think that he can actually wrestle with a lion.
- او این شهامت را دارد که تصور کند واقعاً می‌تواند با یک شیر کشتی بگیرد.

n.

**optimist**

['ɒptɪmɪst]

خوش بین، مثبت اندیش



- ❖ An optimist is somebody who sees the good parts of a situation.
- Even though he has physical problems, my brother is an optimist.
- با اینکه برادرم مشکلات جسمی دارد، فردی خوش بین است.



n.

**parade**

[pə'reɪd]

رژه، راهپیمایی



- ❖ A parade is a celebration when groups of people walk in the same direction.
- There were many marching bands in the spring parade.
- گروه‌های موسیقی زیادی در رژه بهار حضور داشتند.

v.

**pave**

[peɪv]

آسفالت کردن، سنگفرش کردن



- ❖ To pave the ground is to lay material on it to make it easier to walk or drive on.
- The path was paved with yellow bricks.
- مسیر با آجرهای زرد سنگ فرش شد.

n.

**phantom**

['fæntəm]

شبح، روح



- ❖ A phantom is a ghost or spirit.
- A scary phantom appeared from out of the darkness.
- شبح ترسناکی از تاریکی بیرون آمد.

adj.

**portable**

['pɔ:təbl]

قابل انتقال، قابل حمل



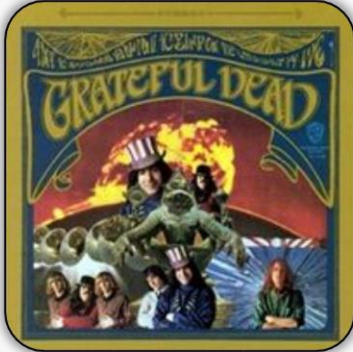
- ❖ Something that is portable is able to be moved or carried easily.
- Since computers are portable, people can use them anywhere.
- چون کامپیوترها قابل حمل هستند، مردم می‌توانند همه جا از آنها استفاده کنند.

n.

**poster**

['pəʊstə]

پوستر



❖ A poster is a written announcement that is used to advertise something.

➤ I saw a poster about a free concert in the park.

➤ برای کنسرت رایگان در پارک پوستر را دیدم.

v.

**scratch**

[skrætʃ]

خاریدن، خاراندن



❖ To scratch is to make small cuts with a claw or fingernail.

➤ I used a stick to scratch my back.

➤ از یک تکه چوب برای خاراندن پشتم استفاده کردم.

n.

**symphony**

['sɪmfəni]

سمفونی



❖ A symphony is a long piece of music performed by many musicians.

➤ Alex, a violin player, has always dreamt of playing a symphony.

➤ الکس، نوازنده ویولون، همیشه رویای نواختن سمفونی را داشته‌است.

n.

**widow**

['wɪdəʊ]

بیوه



❖ A widow is a woman whose husband has died.

➤ The widow had no children and was very lonely.

➤ زن بیوه بچه نداشت و خیلی تنها بود.

# Exercise 1

## PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- a group of animals, such as cows  
a. graze                      b. a herd                      c. a bundle                      d. a poster
- to escape from trouble or danger  
a. flee                      b. graze                      c. pave                      d. initiate
- somebody who thinks that good things will happen  
a. a widow                      b. a phantom                      c. a parade                      d. an optimist
- able to be moved or carried easily  
a. greed                      b. parade                      c. portable                      d. nerve
- a small road  
a. a bulb                      b. a symphony                      c. a scratch                      d. a lane

## PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- baggage  
a. a group of animals                      b. an object used during a trip  
c. a glass object                      d. a celebration
- nerve  
a. happiness                      b. sadness  
c. anger                      d. bravery
- initiate  
a. to run away                      b. to start  
c. to hit                      d. to cut
- graze  
a. to eat                      b. to want more than you need  
c. to carry                      d. to make nice sounds
- phantom  
a. an animal                      b. a person who sees the good side of situation  
c. a ghost                      d. a person whose husband has died



**Choose the word that is a better fit for each blank.**

**1. initiated / symphony**

The band was almost ready to perform the \_\_\_\_\_. After a few moments, they \_\_\_\_\_ the thirty-minute piece.

**2. graze / cattle**

The large field was full of grass where the animals could \_\_\_\_\_. The farmer knew his \_\_\_\_\_ would be glad to live there.

**3. optimist / nerve**

Andy didn't have the \_\_\_\_\_ to tell his teacher that he had made a mistake. However, Kristin, an \_\_\_\_\_, thought the teacher wouldn't get angry.

**4. lane / paved**

The man wondered if the \_\_\_\_\_ near his house would ever be \_\_\_\_\_.

**5. bundle / herd**

A \_\_\_\_\_ of goats followed the rancher into the barn. He opened a \_\_\_\_\_ of food and fed them.

**6. greed / widow**

The \_\_\_\_\_ told the hungry children to leave her house. She had more than enough food, but her \_\_\_\_\_ kept her from sharing.

**7. parade / posters**

My whole class was invited to walk in the \_\_\_\_\_. We carried large \_\_\_\_\_ that had our school's name on them.

**8. bulb / portable**

The woman bought a \_\_\_\_\_ lamp that she could take with her on trips. After a year, however, she had to buy a new \_\_\_\_\_ for the lamp.

**9. fled / phantom**

There was a loud noise, then a large \_\_\_\_\_ came into the room. The children screamed and \_\_\_\_\_ immediately.

**10. baggage / scratched**

He bought new \_\_\_\_\_ before the trip, but after the first time he used them, they were \_\_\_\_\_ and looked old.

# The Bremen Town Musicians

Larry the cow, Harry the rooster and Lester the duck lived on a **widow's** farm. They dreamed of playing music in a **parade**.

One day, the widow went to the lawn where her **herd** of **cattle** was **grazing**. "I'll eat him tomorrow," she said, pointing to Larry.

Larry wanted to **flee**, but he didn't have the **nerve** to go by himself. Then his friends Lester and Harry showed him a **poster**.

"It's for a parade in Bremen. We'll go with you, and we can perform our **symphony** there," Lester said.

The animals put together a small **bundle** that held a drum, a flute and a **portable** microphone. Then they took their **baggage** and **initiated** their long journey.

They walked down a **paved lane** all day. That night, they looked in the window of a house. They saw a group of thieves. They were eating a large dinner and telling stories about their **greed** and the people they stole from.

Lester was an **optimist**. He said, "I think we can scare them away!"

Soon, the animals came up with a plan. Harry flew inside and knocked over the lamp. "What was that?" screamed a thief as the **bulb** broke. They could barely see now.

Then Larry stood on two feet, and Lester flew to the top of his head. They looked very big. All three of the animals made scary noises. The thieves tried to hit the animals. But Harry flew over them and **scratched** them.

"It's a **phantom!**" yelled one thief.

The thieves ran away. The animals ate and rested. The next morning, Larry said, "Why go to Bremen? We can stay here and make music!" And so they remained there and were quite happy.





## موزیسین‌های شهر بریمن

لری گاو، هری خروسه، و لستر اردکه در مزرعه‌ی یک زن بیوه زندگی می‌کردند. آنها رویای اجرای موسیقی در یک رژه را داشتند. یک روز، زن بیوه سراغ چمنزاری رفت که گله‌اش در آنجا می‌چرید. با اشاره به لری گفت: "فردا اونو می‌خورم"

لری می‌خواست فرار کند، اما او جرات تنها رفتن را نداشت. سپس دوستانش لستر و هری به او یک پوستر نشان دادند. لستر گفت: "این پوستر برای رژه‌ای در بریمن است. با تو خواهیم آمد و میتونم سمفونیمون رو اونجا اجرا کنیم."

حیوانات دسته کوچکی را جمع کردند که شامل درام، یک فلوت و یک میکروفون قابل حمل بود. سپس چمدان‌های خود را برداشتند و سفر درازشان را آغاز کردند. تمام روز را در یک مسیر سنگ‌فرش شده طی کردند.

آن شب، به پنجره‌ی خانه‌ای نگاه کردند. گروهی از دزدان را دیدند. درحال خوردن شامی بزرگ بودند و داستان‌هایی درباره‌ی طمع‌شان و کسانی که از آنها دزدی می‌کردند، تعریف می‌کردند.

لستر خوش‌بین بود. او گفت: "فکر می‌کنم بتوانیم آنها را ترسانده و فراری دهیم." خیلی زود، حیوانات نقشه‌ای به ذهنشان رسید. هری به داخل پرواز کرد و لامپ را زمین انداخت. وقتی چراغ شکست یکی از دزدها فریاد زد: "اون چی بود؟"

آنها اکنون به سختی می‌توانستند ببینند. سپس لری روی دو پا ایستاد و لستر پرید بالای سر او. آنها خیلی بزرگ دیده می‌شدند. هر سه حیوان صداهایی ترسناک در می‌آوردند. دزدها سعی کردند حیوانات را بزنند. ولی هری بالای آنها پرواز کرد و آنها را با چنگ هایش ضخم کرد.

یکی از دزدها فریاد زد: "این یک روحه!" دزدان فرار کردند. حیوانات خوردند و استراحت کردند. صبح روز بعد، لری گفت: "چرا بریم برمن؟ می‌تونیم اینجا بمونیم و آهنگ بسازیم!" بنابراین آنها ماندند و خوشبخت بودند.



**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Larry, Harry and Lester were cattle on the widow Riley's farm.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ The animals fled because the widow wanted to kill the herd.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ Larry, Harry and Lester wanted to go to Bremen to perform in a parade.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ The animals initiated the journey with only a portable microphone and a drum in a bundle.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ Larry was an optimist.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ Harry scratched the bulb to break it.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. Where did the cattle graze at the beginning of the story?
  - a. In an old house
  - b. On a lawn
  - c. On the paved lane
  - d. At a parade
2. How did Larry, Harry and Lester find out about the parade?
  - a. From an invitation letter
  - b. From the widow Riley
  - c. From a poster
  - d. From the other animals
3. What were the greedy thieves doing when the animals arrived at the house?
  - a. Stealing things from the house
  - b. Eating a large dinner
  - c. Planning to steal from the widow
  - d. Packing their baggage
4. What did the animals pretend to be in order to scare the thieves away?
  - a. Phantoms
  - b. The police
  - c. The owners of the house
  - d. Thieves



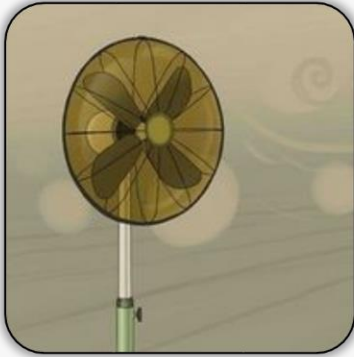
v.

**circulate**

[ˈsɜ:kjəleɪt]

پخش کردن، منتشر کردن

- ❖ To circulate something is to spread it quickly.
- The fan helped to circulate cool air through the room.
- پنکه به پخش کردن هوای خنک در اتاق کمک کرد.



adj.

**consequent**

[ˈkɒn(t)sɪkwənt]

ناشی از

- ❖ consequent means happening because of a different situation.
- Her consequent rash came after she touched the ivy.
- بعد از اینکه به پیچک دست زد، دچار خارش ناشی از آن شد.



v.

**derive**

[dɪˈraɪv]

مشتق شدن

- ❖ To derive something from another source means to get it from that thing.
- Red's nickname was derived from the color of her hair.
- استم مستعار رد از رنگ موهایش مشتق شده است.



v.

**drown**

[draʊn]

غرق شدن

- ❖ To drown is to die from not being able to breathe underwater.
- He would have drowned if the sailors would not have rescued him.
- اگر ملوان‌ها او را نجات نمی‌دادند، غرق می‌شد.



n.

**dynasty**

['daɪnəsti]

دودمان، سلسله، خاندان



- ❖ A dynasty is a series of rulers who are all from the same family.
- The ancient Egyptians had a dynasty that lasted for many years.
- مصریان باستان سلطنتی داشتند که سال‌های زیادی طول کشیده‌است.

n.

**fraction**

['frækʃ(ə)n]

پاره، تکه، بخش



- ❖ A fraction is a small part of something.
- Only a fraction of the cake was gone.
- فقط یک تکه از کیک خورده شد.

n.

**frost**

[frɒst]

یخبندان، شبنم



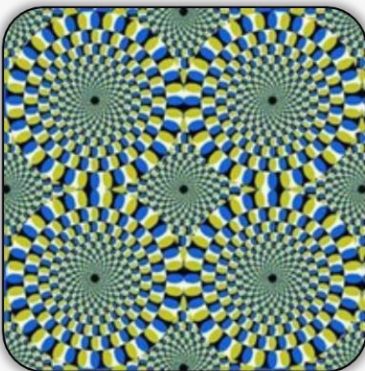
- ❖ frost is a white layer of ice that forms during very cold weather.
- In the morning, the trees were all covered with frost.
- صبح تمام درختان با شبنم منجمد پوشیده شده بودند.

n.

**illusion**

[ɪ'l(j)u:z(ə)n]

خیال واهی، تصور



- ❖ An illusion is something that looks real, but doesn't actually exist.
- Some pictures create an illusion for the eyes.
- برخی تصویرها برای چشم‌ها خیال واهی ایجاد می‌کنند.





v.

**invade**

[in'veid]

حمله کردن، هجوم بردن



- ❖ To invade is to take over a place by force.
- The enemy forces tried to invade our country through the air.
- نیروهای دشمن سعی کردند از طریق هوا به کشور ما حمله کنند.

n.

**lieutenant**

[lef'tenənt]

ستوان



- ❖ A lieutenant is a rank in the military or police, or a person with that rank.
- The lieutenant was a good leader, and his soldiers respected him.
- ستوان رهبر خوبی بود، و سربازانش به او احترام گذاشتند.

adj.

**marine**

[mə'ri:n]

آبزی، دریایی



- ❖ The word marine describes something related to the sea.
- A healthy ocean is full of marine animals.
- اقیانوس سالم پر از حیوانات آبی است.

n.

**merit**

['merit]

شایستگی، سود



- ❖ The merit of something or someone is their good qualities.
- The actor received an award for his merits in the movie.
- بازیگر به خاطر شایستگی‌هایش در فیلم جایزه گرفت.

n.

navy

['neɪvɪ]

نیروی دریایی



❖ A navy is the part of a country's military that fights at sea.

➤ My country is known for our strong navy.

➤ کشورم با نیروی دریایی قوی خود شناخته می‌شود.

adj.

polar

['pəʊlə]

قطبی (شمال یا جنوب)



❖ polar relates to the cold places on Earth's north and south ends.

➤ Only a few people live in the Earth's northern polar region.

➤ فقط چند نفر در منطقه قطبی شمال بر روی زمین زندگی می‌کنند.

n.

ray

[reɪ]

پرتو، اشعه



❖ A ray is a line of light that comes from a bright object.

➤ The sun's warm rays covered the beach.

➤ پرتوهای گرم خورشید ساحل را پوشاندند.

v.

resign

[rɪ'zaɪn]

استعفا دادن، کناره‌گیری کردن



❖ To resign means to quit a job.

➤ After I officially resigned from work, I said goodbye to my boss.

➤ بعد از اینکه به طور رسمی استعفا دادم، از مدیرم خداحافظی کردم.



n.

**suicide**

['s(j)u:saɪd]

خودکشی

❖ suicide is the act of killing oneself.

➤ Some people feel so sad that they think suicide is the only answer.

➤ برخی افراد آنقدر غمگین هستند که فکر می‌کنند خودکشی تنها راه است.



v.

**tremble**

['trembl]

لرزیدن (از سرما)

❖ To tremble is to shake as a result of cold weather.

➤ Harry was not used to the cold, so he trembled most of the day.

➤ هری به سرما عادت نداشت پس بیشتر روز را لرزید.



adj.

**underlying**

[ˌʌndə'laɪɪŋ]

اساسی، زیربنایی

❖ When something is underlying, it is a hidden cause of something else.

➤ Her underlying fear of flying reduced her traveling options.

➤ ترس پنهان او از پرواز گزینه‌های سفرش را کم کرده‌است.



prep.

**via**

['vaɪə], [vi:ə]

به وسیله، از طریق

❖ To travel via something means to travel through or using something.

➤ We arrived in the city from the airport via the train.

➤ ما از فرودگاه به وسیله قطار به شهر رسیدیم.





# Exercise 1

## PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- relates to the cold places on Earth  
a. polar                      b. marine                      c. frost                      d. underlying
- a small part of something  
a. fraction                      b. merit                      c. ray                      d. dynasty
- something that appears real but is not  
a. resign                      b. circulate                      c. derive                      d. illusion
- to get from another source  
a. frost                      b. illusion                      c. derive                      d. invade
- to die in the water from lack of air  
a. via                      b. drown                      c. suicide                      d. underlying

## PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- invade  
a. to come from                      b. to kill oneself  
c. to take over another country                      d. to happen because of something else
- dynasty  
a. thin layer of ice                      b. a group of rulers from the same family  
c. a person that knows about the sea                      d. very cold
- merit  
a. a low ranking officer                      b. a good quality  
c. a part of a whole                      d. a hidden problem
- resign  
a. to quit                      b. to die underwater  
c. to shake                      d. to move from place to place
- ray  
a. a way to get through  
b. something that seems to be something else  
c. a group of soldiers at sea  
d. a line of light

Circle two words in each group that are related.

- |                  |               |             |           |
|------------------|---------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1. a. tremble    | b. circulate  | c. ray      | d. frost  |
| 2. a. dynasty    | b. marine     | c. navy     | d. merit  |
| 3. a. lieutenant | b. derive     | c. polar    | d. invade |
| 4. a. consequent | b. underlying | c. fraction | d. resign |
| 5. a. illusion   | b. suicide    | c. via      | d. drown  |

### Exercise 3

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- We only require that you donate a small portion of your weekly earnings to our cause.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The massive empire that involved one family ruled for over 2,000 years.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The thin lines of sunlight warmed the small room and made it comfortable.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The unreal situation fooled many people into thinking that it was real.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Josie arrived by use of the subway.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The scent of her perfume passed quickly from person to person through the room.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- After hearing about the new policy, Mitch was so upset that he quit his position.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The thin layer of ice covered the ground and the windows.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The kitten shook uncontrollably from being cold and wet.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I was a low ranking officer after graduating from the military academy.  
\_\_\_\_\_



# How Did Greenland Get Its Name?

The nation of Greenland isn't very green. The sun's **rays** don't shine there for three whole months. As a result, it's covered with snow, ice and **frost**. Then how was the name **derived**? It started with a Viking named Erik the Red. Erik had many **merits**. However, there was an **underlying** problem . . . he got angry easily. People were scared of him. However, he was married to the niece of a very powerful man. So everybody tried to be nice to him.

One day, Erik fought with his neighbor and killed him. His **consequent** punishment was to leave Iceland.

Many stories **circulated** about a land west of Iceland. But only a **fraction** of the people in Iceland believed them. Still, Erik wanted to find it.

Erik sailed toward the land **via** the Atlantic Ocean. His **marine** knowledge was good, but the trip was hard. Some of his men **drowned**. Erik's **lieutenant** wanted to **resign** from his position. Others thought about committing **suicide**.

Suddenly, Erik thought he saw something. "I don't believe it," said Erik. "It must be an **illusion**." But it was no trick—it was the new land!

Erik **trembled** in the cold **polar** air. He saw that there was ice everywhere. He realized that the ice could keep enemies out. Not even the best **navy** could **invade** the new land. He could start a new **dynasty** in his name. But how could he convince people to live here?

"I'll call it 'Greenland,'" he said. Erik's plan worked. Within two years, over a thousand people moved to Greenland. In the end, Greenland got its name all because of a trick.





## گرینلند چگونه نام خود را بدست آورد؟

کشور گرینلند زیاد سر سبز نیست. آنجا برای سه ماه کامل پرتوی خورشید نمی‌تابد. در نتیجه، با برف، یخ و شبنم یخ زده پوشیده شده است. پس نام آن از کجا گرفته شد؟ با یک وایکینگ به نام اریک قرمز شروع شد. اریک شایستگی‌های زیادی داشت. هرچند، مشکلی اساسی وجود داشت... به راحتی عصبانی می‌شد.

مردم از او می‌ترسیدند. اگر چه او با دختر برادر مردی قدرتمند ازدواج کرده بود. بنابراین همگی سعی می‌کردند با او رفتار مناسبی داشته باشند. یک روز، اریک با همسایه خود جنگید و او را کشت. مجازات متعاقب او این بود که باید ایسلند را ترک کند. داستان‌های زیادی در مورد سرزمینی در غرب ایسلند می‌چرخید.

ولی تنها کسری از مردم ایسلند آن داستان‌ها را باور داشتند. با این حال، اریک می‌خواست آن را پیدا کند. اریک از طریق اقیانوس اطلس با قایق به طرف آن سرزمین حرکت کرد. دانش دریایی او خوب بود، ولی سفر دشوار بود.

برخی از مردان او (ملوان‌هایش) غرق شدند. ستوان اریک می‌خواست از سمت خود کناره گیری کند. بقیه به خودکشی فکر می‌کردند. ناگهان، اریک فکر کرد چیزی دیده است.

اریک گفت: "باور نمی‌کنم، باید یک توهم باشد." اما فریبی درکار نبود - سرزمین جدید بود! اریک در هوای سرد قطبی می‌لرزید. او دید که همه جا یخ هست. متوجه شد که یخ می‌تواند دشمنان را دور نگه دارد. حتی بهترین نیروی دریایی هم نمی‌توانست به آن سرزمین جدید حمله کند. می‌توانست سلسله‌ای جدید به نام خود آغاز کند.

اما چطور می‌توانست مردم را به زندگی کردن در اینجا قانع کند؟ اریک گفت: "اسمش رو می‌زارم سرزمین سبز". نقشه اریک جواب داد. در عرض دو سال، بیش از هزار نفر به گرینلند مهاجرت کردند. در نهایت، گرینلند اسم خود را کاملاً از یک ترفند بدست آورد.

**PART A** Mark each statement **T** for true or **F** for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_\_ The sun's rays don't ever shine on Greenland.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_ Erik the Red wanted to start a dynasty in his name in Iceland.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_ Erik the Red's consequent punishment for killing his neighbor was to leave Iceland for Denmark.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_ Erik's lieutenant thought about resigning.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_ The ice around Greenland protected it from being invaded by navies.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_ Greenland's name was derived from Erik's favorite color.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. According to the story, what was Erik's underlying problem?
  - a. He traveled via ship.
  - b. He had many merits.
  - c. He got angry easily.
  - d. He circulated stories that weren't true.
2. All of the following happened to people on Erik's ship EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. they wanted to resign
  - b. they found gold
  - c. they drowned
  - d. they thought about suicide
3. What did Erik think he was looking at when he first saw Greenland?
  - a. A fraction
  - b. An illusion
  - c. Frost
  - d. A marine bird
4. Why did Erik want to bring more people to Greenland?
  - a. To help them grow food
  - b. So he could set up a dynasty
  - c. To explore more land
  - d. To protect them from the Vikings

v.

**alter**

[ˈɔːltə]

(جزئیات را) عوض کردن، تغییر دادن



- ❖ To alter something means to make a small change to it.
- I altered the color of my nails to match my hair.
- رنگ ناخن‌هایم را تغییر دادم تا با رنگ مویم هماهنگ باشد.

adv.

**aside**

[ə'saɪd]

در یک کنار، به یک طرف



- ❖ If someone stands aside, they are on or to one side.
- The man stood aside and opened the door for me.
- مرد کنار ایستاد و در را برای من باز کرد.

n.

**autumn**

[ˈɔːtəm]

پاییز



- ❖ autumn is the season of the year between summer and winter.
- I love when the leaves fall in autumn because I can play in them.
- ریختن برگ‌ها را در پاییز دوست دارم چون بین آنها بازی می‌کنم.

v.

**blend**

[blend]

درآمیختن، مخلوط کردن



- ❖ To blend is to mix two or more things together so that they become one thing.
- My wife blended together all of the ingredients to make a delicious stew.
- همسر من چند ماده غذایی را درآمیخت تا خورش خوشمزه‌ای درست کند.





v.

## collapse

[kə'ləeps]

فروریختن (ناگهانی)، فروپاشیدن



❖ To collapse is to fall down suddenly.

➤ The tree collapsed right in front of our house.

➤ درخت درست جلوی خانه ما فروافتاد.

v.

## crush

[kraʃ]

خردکردن، له کردن



❖ To crush something is to press it together so its shape is destroyed.

➤ Selena's new car was crushed when something fell on top of it.

➤ ماشین جدید سلنا وقتی له شد که چیزی روی سقف آن افتاد.

v.

## curve

[kɜ:v]

پیچیدن، خم شدن



❖ To curve is to move in a line that bends and does not go straight.

➤ The road curves to the left and to the right.

➤ جاده به سمت چپ و راست می پیچد.

adj.

## disgusting

[dis'gɑ:stɪŋ]

تنفرآمیز، حال به هم زنی



❖ If something is disgusting, it is very unpleasant.

➤ After running all day, Greg's feet had a disgusting odor.

➤ بعد از اینکه گرگ تمام روز را دوید، پاهای او بوی حال به هم زنی می دادند.



n.

**drain**

[drein]



آبریز، لوله فاضلاب

- ❖ A drain is a pipe that carries away water from a building, such as in a kitchen.
- The water in the sink goes down the drain as you wash your hands.
- درحالیکه دستان خود را می‌شوید آب سینک از لوله فاضلاب خارج می‌شود.

v.

**embrace**

[im'breis]



بغل کردن، در آغوش کشیدن

- ❖ To embrace is to hug.
- When they saw each other again, the happy couple embraced.
- وقتی زوج خوشبخت دوباره یکدیگر را دیدند، همدیگر را بغل کردند.

v.

**envy**

['envi]



رشک‌بردن، حسادت کردن

- ❖ To envy someone is to wish that you had something that they have.
- Sally envied the happy couple.
- سالی به زوج خوشبخت حسادت کرد.

n.

**fireworks**

['faɪəwɜ:k]



آتش‌بازی

- ❖ fireworks are objects that create colored lights when they are lit.
- The display of fireworks was so beautiful.
- نمایش آتش‌بازی بسیار زیبا بود.



n.

**flour**

['flaʊə]

آرد



❖ flour is a powder made from plants that is used to make foods like bread.

➤ I wanted to bake a pie, but I needed flour.

➤ می‌خواستم پای بپزم، اما به آرد نیاز داشتم.

n.

**fuse**

[fju:z]

فتیله (مواد منفجره)



❖ A fuse is a string that you light on fireworks to make them explode.

➤ The boy lit the fuse on the rocket and waited for it to burst in the sky.

➤ پسر فتیله موشک را روشن و صبر کرد تا به سوی آسمان منفجر شود.

v.

**ginger**

['dʒɪndʒə]

زنجبیل



❖ ginger is a spice from the root of a plant. It tastes spicy and sweet.

➤ ginger is a common ingredient in many dishes from India.

➤ زنجبیل یک ماده رایج در بسیاری از غذاهای هندی است.

adj.

**jealous**

['dʒeləs]

حسود



❖ If you are jealous, you think someone might take something from you.

➤ Miriam was jealous because Sue was paying too much attention to Jim.

➤ میریام حسادت کرد چون سو خیلی به جیم توجه می‌کرد.





n.

**paste**

[peɪst]

چسب

- ❖ A paste is a thick and smooth substance.
- My son needed some paste for a school project.
- پسرم برای پروژه مدرسه به مقداری چسب نیاز داشت.

n.

**receipt**

[ri'si:t]

رسید

- ❖ A receipt is a paper that proves that something was received or bought.
- After looking at my receipt, I realized that I had spent too much money.
- بعد از اینکه به رسید خود نگاه کردم، متوجه شدم پول زیادی خرج کردم.

v.

**wipe**

[waɪp]

تمیز کردن، دستمال کشیدن

- ❖ To wipe something is to slide a piece of cloth over it to clean it.
- She wiped the dust from the windows.
- او گرد و خاک را از پنجره‌ها پاک کرد.

n.

**wire**

['waɪə]

سیم فلزی، مفتول

- ❖ A wire is a thin string made out of metal.
- The wires were connected to towers that brought electricity to the city.
- سیم‌ها به برج‌هایی وصل شدند که برق شهر را تأمین می‌کردند.

## Exercise 1

Circle two words that are related in the group.

1. a. collapse                      b. alter                      c. wire                      d. crush
2. a. disgusting                      b. envy                      c. jealous                      d. wipe
3. a. ginger                      b. autumn                      c. receipt                      d. flour
4. a. fuse                      b. curve                      c. fireworks                      d. drain
5. a. aside                      b. paste                      c. blend                      d. embrace

## Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. The mixture was a funny color and looked very unpleasant.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. After the house fell down suddenly, the family built a new home somewhere else.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. When the boy spilled his milk, his mother rubbed a cloth over it.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The bird moved in a line that was not straight through the sky.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The mother hugged the crying child to make her feel better.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The farmer's food was usually ready in the season before winter.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The metal string was in between the two poles.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. She made small changes to her drawing before giving it to her friend.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. The pipe that carries water away was clogged with hair.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. I asked the taxi driver to give me a document that proved how much I paid.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Choose the word that is a better fit for each blank.**

1. collapsed / altered

The roof of the old house hadn't been \_\_\_\_\_ since it was built. Since it wasn't cared for, it eventually \_\_\_\_\_.

2. blend / ginger

The recipe says to use two tablespoons of fresh \_\_\_\_\_. Then \_\_\_\_\_ all of the ingredients together and put it over the meat.

3. envied / autumn

Last \_\_\_\_\_, my neighbor's parents gave him a toy rocket to put together. I \_\_\_\_\_ him because I've always wanted one for myself.

4. aside / wires

The family stood \_\_\_\_\_ as the father tried to fix the car. He was sure that he just needed to fix the \_\_\_\_\_ on it.

5. crushed / receipt

On my way home, I accidentally \_\_\_\_\_ the carton of eggs. The store let me exchange them since I had my \_\_\_\_\_.

6. fuse/ fireworks

At the end of the festival, there were supposed to be \_\_\_\_\_. However, they didn't work because something had damaged the \_\_\_\_\_.

7. paste / wiped

Annie bought a type of paint that was a thick \_\_\_\_\_. It was easy to use, and when she was done, she \_\_\_\_\_ it up with an old cloth.

8. curved / embraced

The player hit the ball and it \_\_\_\_\_ through the field without anybody touching it. As a result, the team won the game and \_\_\_\_\_ each other in happiness.

9. disgusting / jealous

The girl wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ of her brother's new friend. All they did was talk about \_\_\_\_\_ things like frogs and snakes.

10. flour / drain

Megan didn't use enough \_\_\_\_\_ when making pancakes. As a result, she poured the mixture down the \_\_\_\_\_ and tried again.



# Everyone is Special

When I was young, everything that went wrong in my house seemed to be my fault. Once, my brothers tried to make cookies. They **blended flour** and **ginger** and made a **disgusting paste**. Then they tried to wash it down the **drain**, but it got all over the floor. Later, my brothers said that I did it and I had to **wipe** it up.

I worried that my parents liked them more than me. One **autumn** day, I was sure I would make my parents proud. I bought a model rocket. After I put it together, I invited everybody to watch it. I wanted my brothers to **envy** my technical knowledge. I lit the **fuse**, but nothing happened.

"Looks like your **fireworks** don't work. I hope you kept the **receipt** so you can return them," my brother said.

"It's not fireworks!" I screamed. They were making fun of me again.

I didn't know what went wrong. I hadn't **altered** anything. I quickly moved the **wires** on the bottom, hoping that would help. Suddenly, the rocket flew up. We stood **aside** as it **curved** through the lawn and ran straight into the mailbox. Then the mailbox **collapsed**. The rocket was **crushed**.

Embarrassed, I ran inside and hid. A few minutes later, my mom asked, "Are you OK?"

"I just wanted them to be **jealous** of me for once. Now I see why you and Dad don't love me as much as them," I said.

"That's not true!" said my mom. "See my fingers . . . each one is different. You kids are like my fingers: all are different, but I love them all the same."

I **embraced** her. Now I know that my parents love me just as much as my brothers.



## همه خاص هستند

وقتی من جوان بودم، هر مشکلی که در خانه پیش می‌آمد انگار تقصیر من بود. یک بار، برادرانم سعی کردند کلوچه درست کنند. آنها آرد و زنجبیل را ترکیب کرده و خمیر چندش آوری درست کردند. بعد تلاش کردند آن را شسته و از آبرو تخلیه کنند، ولی روی تمام کف اتاق پخش شد.

بعد، برادرانم گفتند که من این کار را انجام داده‌ام و باید آن را پاک کنم. نگران این بودم که پدر و مادرم آنها را از من بیشتر دوست داشته باشند. یک روز پاییزی، مطمئن بودم که باعث افتخار والدینم می‌شم. یک مدل راکت خریدم.

بعد از اینکه سرهمش کردم، همه را دعوت کردم که آن را تماشا کنند. می‌خواستم برادرانم به دانش فنی من غبطه بخورند. فتیله را روشن کردم، ولی اتفاقی نیفتاد. برادرم گفت: "به نظر میاد آتش بازیها کار نمی‌کند. امیدوارم رسید خرید رو نگه داشته باشی تا بتونی پششون بدی."

فریاد زدم: "ترقه نیست!" دوباره در حال مسخره کردن من بودند. نمی‌دانستم چه چیزی اشتباه پیش رفته بود. هیچی رو تغییر نداده بودم. سریعاً سیم‌های زیرین را جابجا کردم، به این امید که کمک کند. ناگهان، راکت به بالا پرواز کرد.

وقتی که داشت میان چمن‌ها می‌چرخید و وارد جعبه‌نامه شد، ما کنار ایستادیم. بعد جعبه‌نامه پایین افتاد. راکت خرد شده بود. خجالت زده به داخل خانه دویدم و پنهان شدم. چند دقیقه بعد، مادرم پرسید: "خوبی؟" گفتم: "فقط می‌خواستم برای یکبار آنها به من حسودی کنند. حالا می‌فهمم چرا تو و پدر من را به اندازه آنها دوست ندارید."

مادرم گفت: "این درست نیست!" انگشتهای من را بین... هر کدام متفاوت هستن. شما بچه‌ها مثل انگشت‌های من هستید: همه متفاوت‌اند، ولی من همه را یکسان دوست دارم." او را بغل کردم. حالا می‌دانم که والدینم من رو درست به اندازه برادرانم دوست دارند.

**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ The brothers blended flour and ginger together when trying to make a disgusting paste.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ The family stood aside on an autumn day to watch the girl launch her rocket.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ The model rocket worked after the fuse was altered.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ The mailbox is crushed because the rocket curves into it.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ The girl wanted her brothers to be jealous of her.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ The mother embraces the girl and says she doesn't love any of her children more than the others.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. All of the following happened when the brothers tried to cook EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. they wiped up the mess                      b. they tried to put the paste down the drain  
c. they blended ginger and flour              d. they got the floor dirty
2. The girl thought that putting together the model rocket proved her \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. computer skills                                  b. technical knowledge  
c. experience working with wires              d. disgust of fireworks
3. Why does her brother say that he hopes she kept the receipt?  
a. He envies her rocket.                          b. He wants to buy her a new rocket.  
c. He wants her to save money.                d. He thinks she should return the rocket.
4. The mother tells the girl that her children are like her fingers because \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. some are larger than others                  b. they all are small  
c. some are more important                    d. they all are different but loved





v.

**acknowledge** [ək'naɪdʒ]

قبول کردن، تایید کردن



- ❖ If you acknowledge something, you accept that it is true or that it exists.
- The teacher acknowledged that the young student was hungry.
- معلم قبول کرد که دانش‌آموز کم‌سن گرسنه است.

n.

**ambassador** [æm'bæsədə]

سفیر



- ❖ An ambassador is a government worker who works in another country.
- The ambassador from Korea was in charge of the conference.
- سفیر کره مسئول کنفرانس بود.

n.

**blonde** [blɒnd]

طلایی، بور



- ❖ If someone is a blonde, they have light-colored hair.
- My cousin is different from me. She is a blonde with blue eyes.
- دخترخاله‌ام از من متفاوت است. او بور است و چشمان آبی دارد.

v.

**conquer** ['kɒŋkə]

فتح کردن، مغلوب کردن



- ❖ To conquer a country means to attack and take control of it.
- The soldiers were trying to conquer the world.
- سربازان سعی کردند جهان را فتح کنند.



v.

**drag**

[dræg]

کشاندن، روی زمین کشیدن



- ❖ To drag something means to pull it across the ground.
- The dog was dragging his owner down the street.

➤ سگ صاحب خود را به پایین خیابان می کشید.

v.

**exaggerate**

[ig'zædʒəreɪt]

غلو کردن، لافیدن، گزاف گفتن



- ❖ To exaggerate is to say that something is bigger or better than it really is.
- Jimmy wasn't exaggerating about the seriousness of his injury.

➤ جیمی درباره جدی بودن جراحت خود غلو نمی کرد.

n.

**heritage**

['herɪtɪdʒ]

میراث، یادگار



- ❖ heritage is the collection of features of a society, such as language and religion.
- Teepees are part of the heritage of the American Indians of the plains.

➤ خیمه های مخروطی بخشی از میراث سرخپوستان دشت های آمریکا هستند.

v.

**insult**

[ɪn'sʌlt]

توهین کردن، اهانت کردن



- ❖ To insult someone is to say things that will hurt their feelings.
- The girls insulted each other all afternoon.

➤ تمام عصر دخترها به یکدیگر توهین کردند.

adv.

**meanwhile**

[ˌmi:n'waɪl]

در این حال



- ❖ meanwhile means until something happens or while something is happening.
- He wants to be a doctor in the future, but meanwhile, he works a regular job.
- او می‌خواهد دکتر شود، اما در این حال، شغل ثابت دارد.

n.

**necklace**

['neɪkləs]

گردنبند



- ❖ A necklace is a piece of jewelry that people wear around their necks.
- Joyce received a lovely pearl necklace for her wedding anniversary.
- جویس برای سالگرد ازدواجش یک گردنبند مروارید زیبا هدیه گرفت.

n.

**noble**

['nəʊbl]

اشراف زاده



- ❖ A noble is a rich and powerful person.
- The Queen invited a noble from a nearby country to dinner.
- ملکه از کشور مجاور اشراف‌زاده‌ای را برای شام دعوت کرد.

adj.

**precious**

['preʃəs]

با ارزش، گرانبها، قیمتی



- ❖ When something is precious, it is valuable and important.
- In a desert, water can be more precious than money.
- در صحرا، آب می‌تواند باارزش‌تر از پول باشد.





n.

**prejudice**

['predʒədɪs]

پیشداوری



- ❖ A prejudice is an unfair opinion about someone before you get to know them.
- The company's rules against gender prejudice must be enforced.
- قوانین شرکت ضد پیشداوری جنسیتی باید اجرا شوند.

n.

**rumor**

['ru:mə]

شایعه



- ❖ A rumor is a story that may not be true.
- Carla was spreading rumors around the office.
- کارلا در محل کار شایعه پخش می‌کند.

n.

**sin**

[sɪn]

گناه



- ❖ A sin is something is wrong for religious reasons.
- Taking something that doesn't belong to you is a sin.
- برداشتن چیزی که مال شما نیست گناه است.

n.

**spectacle**

['spektəkl]

منظره دیدنی



- ❖ A spectacle is an amazing sight.
- Niagara Falls is quite a spectacle.
- آبشار نیگارا واقعاً یک منظره تماشایی است.

n.

**stack**

[stæk]

(هیزم یا کاه ... کپه، دسته، توده)



❖ A stack is a pile of different things.

➤ There was a stack of paperwork on his desk to complete.

➤ یک دسته کاغذ اداری بر روی میزش بود که باید انجام می‌شدند.

adj.

**suspicious**

[sə'spiʃəs]

مشکوک، شکاک



❖ If someone is suspicious of someone else, they do not trust that person.

➤ Dad was suspicious of the caller on the line.

➤ بابا به تماس‌گیرنده پشت خط مشکوک بود.

n.

**tin**

[tɪn]

(شیمی) قلع



❖ tin is a cheap white metal.

➤ Soup is a common food that is often sold in tin cans.

➤ سوپ غذای رایجی است که اغلب در قوطی‌های قلعی به فروش می‌رسد.

n.

**vase**

[va:z]

گلدان



❖ A vase is an attractive container where people keep flowers.

➤ The vase was filled with such lovely flowers.

➤ گلدان‌ها با چنین گل‌های زیبایی پر شدند.

# Exercise 1

## PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- something you keep flowers in  
a. vase                      b. stack                      c. tin                      d. spectacle
- to say something is better than it really is  
a. exaggerate              b. drag                      c. heritage              d. insult
- a rich and important person  
a. ambassador              b. noble                      c. necklace              d. prejudice
- having light, yellow-colored hair  
a. suspicious              b. blonde                      c. rumor                      d. conquer
- not trusting of someone  
a. suspicious              b. meanwhile              c. acknowledge              d. precious

## PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- heritage  
a. features of a society                      b. to put into something else  
c. a government worker                      d. a rich and powerful person
- spectacle  
a. an amazing sight                      b. to take something  
c. something that is wrong                      d. a piece of jewelry
- drag  
a. to attack                      b. very important  
c. not trusting                      d. to pull something
- sin  
a. something wrong for religious reasons                      b. the traditions of a country  
c. a place to keep flowers                      d. an official working in a foreign country
- tin  
a. a color of hair                      b. to say mean things  
c. a cheap metal                      d. to control a country



**Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.**

1. The police waited for the criminals. While this was happening, the criminals were entering the building through the back door.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. The person who works for the government is from the UK but works in China.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. The piece of jewelry worn around the neck was made of pure gold.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. I admit that I was wrong in that situation.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Don't say unkind things to your little sister!

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Alexander the Great attacked and took control over many countries in Africa and Asia.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. She admired the very valuable ring that her mother wore.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. Would you please place one on top of the other the boxes?

\_\_\_\_\_

9. You shouldn't spread things that may not be true about people.

\_\_\_\_\_

10. Some visitors to foreign countries experience unfair judgment, but most have pleasant experiences.

\_\_\_\_\_

# Pizarro and the Inca Gold

According to **rumors**, there's lots of **precious** gold hidden in the jungles of Peru. It got there when the Spanish **conquered** parts of South America. The Spanish **noble**, Francisco Pizarro, arrived in Peru in the 1500s. He found a group of people called the Incas. The Incas believed that their leader, Atahualpa, was both a king and a god. But Pizarro didn't agree.

"It is a **sin** for a man to think he is God!" he said to Atahualpa.

Atahualpa thought Pizarro was **insulting** his **heritage**. He thought the **blonde** Spanish men held **prejudices** against the Incas. But Atahualpa was a kind man and didn't want to fight the Spaniards. He said, "If I give you a room full of gold, will you leave my country in peace?"

Pizarro was **suspicious**. He thought Atahualpa was **exaggerating**. But a few days later, Pizarro returned to the Inca palace with his **ambassadors**. He saw a room filled with **stacks** of gold. There were golden **necklaces**, cups, plates and **vases**. It was a great **spectacle**. He **acknowledged** that Atahualpa had told the truth. But after seeing the gold, he wanted all of Peru's gold. So he didn't leave the country.

The Spanish soldiers stayed in Peru and grabbed all the gold they could find. But the Inca people tricked the Spaniards. They mixed the gold with **tin** so that it was poor quality. They gave this gold to the Spaniards. **Meanwhile**, they hid the good gold. They stuffed it into sacks and **dragged** it deep into the jungle. The Spanish conquerors never found the gold. People think it is still there today.

## پیزارو و طلاهای اینکا

بر اساس شایعات، طلاهای گرانبهای زیادی در جنگل‌های پرو پنهان شده است. آن طلاها وقتی به آنجا رسید که اسپانیایی‌ها قسمت‌هایی از آمریکای جنوبی را فتح کردند. فرانسیسکو پیزارو، اشراف زاده اسپانیایی، در دهه 1500 وارد پرو شد.

گروهی از مردم را پیدا کرد که اینکاها نامیده می‌شدند. اینکاها باور داشتند که رهبر آنها، آتاهوالپا، هم یک شاه است و هم یک خدا. اما پیزارو قبول نمی‌کرد. او به آتاهوالپا گفت: "این گناه است که انسانی فکر کند خداست!"

آتاهوالپا فکر کرد که پیزارو دارد به میراث او توهین می‌کند. او فکر کرد که مردان بلوند اسپانیایی در مورد اینکاها پیشداوری می‌کنند. اما آتاهوالپا انسانی مهربان بود و نمی‌خواست با اسپانیایی‌ها بجنگد. او گفت: "اگر بهت یک اتاق پر از طلا بدم، کشورم را با صلح ترک می‌کنی؟"

پیزارو شک کرد. فکر کرد آتاهوالپا غلو می‌کند. (لاف می‌زند.) ولی چند روز بعد، پیزارو به همراه سفیران خود به قصر اینکا بازگشت. اتاقی را دید که با گپه‌های طلا پر شده بود. آنجا گردنبند، فنجان، بشقاب و گلدان‌هایی طلایی بود. منظره باشکوهی بود.

او پذیرفت که آتاهوالپا راستش را گفته بوده است. اما بعد از دیدن طلاها، او تمام طلاهای پرو را می‌خواست. بنابراین او کشور را ترک نکرد.

سربازان اسپانیایی در پرو ماندند و تمام طلاهایی که می‌توانستند پیدا کنند را قاپیدند. اما اینکاها اسپانیایی‌ها را فریب دادند. آنها طلاها را با قلع ترکیب کردند تا کیفیت آنها پایین باشد.

آنها این طلاها را به اسپانیایی‌ها دادند. در این حین، طلاهای با کیفیت و خوب را پنهان کردند. آنها طلاها را در گونی‌هایی انباشتند و آنها را به اعماق جنگل کشیدند. فاتحان اسپانیایی هرگز آن طلاها را پیدا نکردند. امروزه مردم هنوز فکر می‌کنند طلاها هنوز آنجا است.



# Reading Comprehension

27

## PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Pizarro acknowledged that Atahualpa was honest.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ The Incas of Peru had blonde hair.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ Atahualpa offered Pizarro a room filled with stacks of precious gold.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ The Spanish conquered parts of South America.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ Pizarro thought that Atahualpa had insulted his heritage and that his men held prejudices against the Incas.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ Pizarro agreed that Atahualpa was both a god and a king.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## PART B Answer the questions.

1. Which of the following did NOT appear in the room with gold?
  - a. Pieces of tin
  - b. Necklaces
  - c. Vases
  - d. Cups
2. Which adjective describes Pizarro?
  - a. Noble
  - b. Gentle
  - c. Suspicious
  - d. Sensitive
3. What do the rumors say?
  - a. Pizarro defeated the Incas easily.
  - b. There is a lot of gold in the Peruvian jungle.
  - c. The Incas discovered the Spanish.
  - d. The Spanish arrived in Peru in the 1500s.
4. Who went to the room of gold with Pizarro?
  - a. The King of Spain
  - b. Spanish ambassadors
  - c. Men from the jungle
  - d. Tin makers

v.

ache

[eɪk]

درد کردن، تیر کشیدن

❖ If something aches, it hurts.

➤ Mindy's head ached because she bumped it against the wall.

➤ میندی سردرد داشت چون سرش به دیوار خورد.



adj.

arctic

['ɑ:ktɪk]

قطبی، شمالگانی

❖ If something is arctic, it is from far north near the North Pole.

➤ It is cold when the arctic winds blow.

➤ وقتی بادهای قطبی می‌وزند، هوا سرد می‌شود.



n.

canal

[kə'næl]

آبراه، کانال

❖ A canal is a path for water to travel through.

➤ The city of Venice, Italy, has many canals.

➤ شهر ونیز، ایتالیا، کانال‌های زیادی دارد.



n.

chemist

['kemɪst]

شیمیدان

❖ A chemist is a scientist who works with chemicals.

➤ My mother is a successful chemist who helps invent new products.

➤ مادرم شیمی‌دان موفقی است که به اختراع محصولات جدید کمک می‌کند.





n.

**chill**

[tʃɪl]

سرما، خنکی



❖ A chill is a feeling of cold.

➤ The chill from the cold wind made Bill shiver.

➤ خنکی باد سرد بیل را لرزاند.

n.

**congress**

['kɒŋɡres]

کنگره، مجمع



❖ congress is a group of leaders in a government.

➤ congress makes laws for people to follow.

➤ مجلس قوانینی را وضع می‌کند تا مردم آنها را رعایت کنند.

adj.

**dairy**

['deəri]

لبنی، لبنیاتی



❖ If something is dairy, it is made from milk.

➤ Things like milk and cheese are dairy foods.

➤ چیزهایی مانند شیر و پنیر از غذاهای لبنی هستند.

v.

**descend**

[dɪ'send]

پایین رفتن، پایین آمدن



❖ To descend is to go downward.

➤ I descended the stairs to get out of the building.

➤ از پله‌ها پایین آمدم تا از ساختمان خارج شوم.



n.

grocer

['grəʊsə]

خواربار فروش، بقال

- ❖ A grocer is a person who sells food.
- Our grocer, Mr. Smith, is a very kind man.

➤ خواربار فروش ما، آقای اسمیت، مرد بسیار مهربانی است.

v.

hesitate

['heziteit]

تعجل کردن، تردید کردن، شک کردن

- ❖ To hesitate is to wait for a short time before doing something.
- He hesitated for a moment before he decided which choice to make.

➤ قبل از اینکه تصمیم بگیرد کدام یک را انتخاب کند، لحظه‌ای تردید کرد.

n.

institution

[,ɪn(t)sti'tju:ʃ(ə)n]

نهاد، موسسه

- ❖ An institution is an organization that works to help a city or group of people.
- Banks are vital institutions that businesses and people use every day.

➤ بانک‌ها موسسات مهمی هستند که کسب‌وکارها و مردم هر روز از آنها استفاده می‌کنند.

v.

jog

[dʒɒg]

آهسته دویدن

- ❖ To jog is to run slowly.
- He jogs every day so he can be healthier.

➤ او هر روز می‌دود، پس سالم‌تر می‌ماند.



n.

**merchant**

['mɜːtʃ(ə)nt]

بازرگان، تاجر، کاسب



- ❖ A merchant is a person who sells things.
- The merchant was selling used cars.

➤ آن بازرگان ماشین‌های کارکرده می‌فروخت.

v.

**poke**

[pəʊk]

سیخونک زدن



- ❖ To poke something is to push it with your finger.
- I poked my finger on a thumb tack.

➤ با انگشتم پونز را فشار دادم.

v.

**postpone**

[ˌpəʊst'pəʊn]

عقب انداختن، به تعویق انداختن



- ❖ To postpone something is to make it happen later than planned.
- They postponed the meeting until Elena arrived.

➤ آنها تا رسیدن النا جلسه را به تعویق انداختند.

v.

**splash**

[splæʃ]

پاشیدن، چکه کردن



- ❖ When a liquid splashes, it bursts and hits something.
- Some green paint splashed upon the floor.

➤ کمی رنگ سبز به کف زمین پاشید.



adj.

**stubborn**

['stʌbən]

کله شق، لجباز، یک نده



- ❖ If people are stubborn, they don't change their minds easily.
- Both of my parents are stubborn. They never give in to each other.
- هر دو والدین من یکدنده هستند. آنها هرگز در مقابل هم تسلیم نمی‌شوند.

n.

**suburb**

['sʌbɜ:b]

حومه



- ❖ A suburb is a small part of a large city.
- I grew up in the suburbs only a few minutes outside of the city.
- من در حومه که فقط چند دقیقه تا شهر فاصله دارد بزرگ شدم.

n.

**tide**

[taɪd]

جزر و مد



- ❖ The tide is the level of the water in the sea.
- The tide continued to crawl upon the beach little by little.
- جزر و مد کم‌کم بر روی ساحل پیش رفت.

n.

**tragedy**

['trædʒədi]

مصیبت، فاجعه



- ❖ A tragedy is a very sad event.
- It was a tragedy when his house was struck by lightning and burned.
- فاجعه بود که آذرخش به خانه‌اش زد و آن را سوزاند.



# Exercise 1

## PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

1. very cold  
a. arctic                      b. grocer                      c. canal                      d. tide
2. a person who sells things  
a. dairy                      b. merchant                      c. stubborn                      d. congress
3. something very bad  
a. chemist                      b. chill                      c. tragedy                      d. tide
4. to go down  
a. hesitate                      b. descend                      c. institution                      d. splash
5. to run  
a. postpone                      b. suburb                      c. poke                      d. jog

## PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. hesitate  
a. an organization                      b. to feel pain  
c. to wait for a moment                      d. to make something happen later
2. canal  
a. to go down                      b. a path for water  
c. things made from milk                      d. a small city
3. chill  
a. a group of leaders                      b. a feeling of cold  
c. a person who sells food                      d. to run
4. stubborn  
a. a very bad thing                      b. a person who sells things  
c. when water hits something                      d. not changing your mind
5. poke  
a. to make something later                      b. the level of the sea  
c. to push with your finger                      d. a scientist

**Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.**

1. The party was planned for tonight, but it was moved to a later time.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. I was recently elected to the group of people who make laws in a government.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. My grandfather was a person who sold food.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The hospital is an important organization in the town.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The scientist who works with chemicals created a new formula for health.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The foods made from milk section is in the back of the supermarket.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Don't burst the water inside the tub.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. She lives in the small parts of the large city.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. The level of the water in the sea rises and falls every day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. It hurts in my lower back.  
\_\_\_\_\_



# The Boy Who Saved the Town

Marcus lived in a small **suburb** near the sea. He was a **stubborn** boy, and he only cared about himself. His father worked as a **chemist** for an **institution** and wanted Marcus to get a job there. Instead, the boy delivered milk. Each morning he took **dairy** products to the **grocers**.

One day, Marcus was **jogging** down the street with a gallon of milk to give to a **merchant**. He didn't want to be late. He ran down a path beside a large **canal**. A wall there kept water from coming into the town during high **tide**. But Marcus saw a small hole in the wall. Marcus knew that if the wall broke, it would be a **tragedy** for the town.

At first, he **hesitated**. He had to choose between helping himself and helping the town. There was only one way to save the town. It seemed crazy to him, but it was the only thing he could do. He **poked** his finger into the hole. This didn't fix the problem forever, but it did **postpone** the tragedy.

His finger **ached**. He felt the **chill** of the **arctic** water as it **splashed** him. There was no one else around. He knew he had to wait until the tide **descended**. It was very difficult, but Marcus stayed there and saved the town.

Once the tide had descended, Marcus told everyone what happened. A group of people went to the wall. They saw the hole and fixed it. Everyone was very happy with Marcus. The local **congress** even gave him a gift for saving the town. He was a hero.





## پسری که شهر را نجات داد

مارکوس در حومه‌ای کوچک در نزدیکی دریا زندگی می‌کرد. او پسری لجوج بود و تنها به خودش اهمیت می‌داد. پدرش به عنوان یک شیمی دان برای یک موسسه کار می‌کرد و می‌خواست مارکوس آنجا کار پیدا کند. در عوض، پسر شیر تحویل می‌داد.

هر صبح محصولات لبنی را به مغازه دارها می‌داد. یک روز، مارکوس داشت با یک گالن شیر خیابان را آهسته به سمت پایین می‌دوید تا آن را به یک کاسب بدهد. او نمی‌خواست که دیر کند. او مسیری را کنار یک کانال آب بزرگ پایین می‌دوید.

دیواری در آنجا مانع از این می‌شد که آب هنگام جزر و مد داخل شهر شود. اما مارکوس سوراخی کوچک در دیوار دید. مارکوس میدانست که اگر دیوار بشکند، برای شهر یک تراژدی خواهد بود. ابتدا، دو دل شد.

باید بین کمک کردن به خودش و کمک کردن به شهر یکی را انتخاب می‌کرد. فقط یک راه برای نجات شهر بود. به نظرش احمقانه می‌آمد، اما تنها کاری بود که می‌توانست انجام دهد. او انگشت خود را داخل سوراخ فشرد.

اینکار مشکل را برای همیشه برطرف نمی‌کرد، ولی تراژدی را به تعویق می‌انداخت. انگشت او درد گرفت. سرمای آب قطبی که به او پاشیده می‌شد را حس می‌کرد. کس دیگری دور و بر نبود. می‌دانست باید منتظر بماند تا جزر و مد کم شود. خیلی سخت بود، ولی مارکوس آنجا ماند و شهر را نجات داد.

وقتی که جزر و مد پایین رفته بود، مارکوس به همه گفت چه اتفاقی افتاده است. گروهی از مردم به سمت دیوار رفتند. آن‌ها سوراخ را دیدند و آن را درست کردند. همه خیلی از مارکوس راضی بودند. حتی مجلس محلی به او پاداشی به خاطر نجات شهر داد. او یک قهرمان بود.

**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_\_ Marcus only postponed the tragedy for a short time.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_ The chill of the arctic water made Marcus take his finger out of the wall.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_ Marcus worked in an institution with his father.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_ In the end, everyone was very angry with Marcus.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_ Marcus didn't want to be late taking the milk to the merchant.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_ Marcus ran down a path by a canal.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. Why was Marcus jogging down the street with a gallon of milk?
  - a. He liked to run beside a large canal.
  - b. He had to give it to the grocer soon.
  - c. He was a stubborn boy.
  - d. He had to make it home before the tide descended.
2. Why did Marcus hesitate to poke his finger into the wall?
  - a. He didn't know who to save, himself or the town.
  - b. He didn't want to get in trouble.
  - c. He didn't want a gift from congress.
  - d. The arctic water was so cold.
3. What was Marcus's job?
  - a. He was a chemist.
  - b. He was a grocer in the suburb.
  - c. He did things to help the town.
  - d. He took dairy products to merchants in town.
4. Why did Marcus's finger ache?
  - a. He was very stubborn.
  - b. The hole was very small.
  - c. The water was very cold.
  - d. He knew he would be in trouble.

n.

**bomb**

[bɒm]

بمب



- ❖ A bomb is an object that explodes and destroys large areas.
- The bomb will destroy anything that is near.

➤ بمب هر چیزی را که نزدیک آن باشد خراب می‌کند.

n.

**certificate**

[sə'tɪfɪkət]

گواهی، سند



- ❖ A certificate is a document that says that something is true or happened.
- I was given a certificate after completing the computer course.

➤ بعد از گذراندن دوره کامپیوتر گواهی‌نامه دریافت کردم.

n.

**circumstance** ['sɜ:kəmstæn(t)s]

شرایط، وضعیت



- ❖ A circumstance is an event that makes a situation what it is.
- There were many circumstances behind their success like hard work.

➤ شرایط زیادی سبب موفقیت آنها شد مانند کار سخت.

n.

**coffin**

['kɒfɪn]

تابوت



- ❖ A coffin is a box used to bury dead people.
- When a person passes away, they are usually buried inside of a coffin.

➤ وقتی شخصی می‌میرد، معمولاً در تابوت گذاشته و دفن می‌شود.



v.

**cope**

[kəʊp]

از پس (چیزی یا کسی) برآمدن، تحمل کردن



- ❖ To cope with a difficult or stressful situation means to deal with it.
- He copes with work stress by exercising three or four times a week.
- او با سه یا چهار بار ورزش در طول هفته با استرس کارش مقابله می‌کند.

n.

**criticism**

['kɪtɪsɪz(ə)m]

انتقاد



- ❖ criticism is the act of saying that you don't like or approve of something.
- She had a lot of criticism about their new plan.
- او از طرح جدیدشان انتقادات زیادی کرد.

v.

**devastate**

['devəsteɪt]

ویران کردن، تخریب کردن



- ❖ To devastate something means to completely destroy it.
- The entire wall was devastated.
- کل دیوار خراب شد.

v.

**frown**

[fraʊn]

اخم کردن



- ❖ To frown is to make an unhappy look with your face.
- Melissa frowned when she found out that the party had been cancelled.
- ملیسا وقتی فهمید مهمانی کنسل شده‌است، اخم کرد.

v.

gaze

[geɪz]

زُل زدن، خیره شدن



- ❖ To gaze at something means to look at it for a long time.
- We used a telescope to gaze at the stars for over an hour.
- برای بیشتر از یک ساعت با تلسکوپ به ستاره‌ها چشم دوختیم.

v.

glance

[glɑ:n(t)s]

نگاه انداختن، مختصر نگاه کردن



- ❖ To glance at something means to look at it quickly.
- She glanced behind her to see if he was looking at her.
- او به پشت خود نگاه مختصری کرد تا ببیند آیا آن مرد به او نگاه می‌کند.

n.

grief

[gri:f]

غم و اندوه



- ❖ grief is the feeling of deep sadness, usually when a person dies.
- The grief caused by losing her parents was very difficult for her.
- تحمل غم از دست دادن والدینش برای او بسیار سخت بود.

n.

groom

[gru:m]

داماد



- ❖ A groom is a man who is going to be married.
- The groom looked happy as he walked with his new wife.
- داماد درحالی که در کنار همسر جدیدش قدم می‌زد خوشحال به نظر می‌رسید.

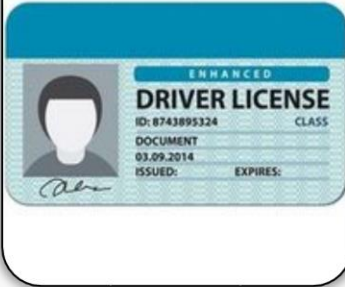


n.

license

['laɪs(ə)n(t)s]

جواز، گواهی‌نامه



- ❖ A license is an official document that gives one permission to do something.
- In the United States you need a driver's license to drive legally.
- در ایالات متحده برای رانندگی قانونی باید گواهی‌نامه رانندگی داشته باشید.

n.

microscope

['maɪkrəskəʊp]

میکروسکوپ



- ❖ A microscope is a device that makes small objects look bigger.
- Germs cannot be seen without a microscope.
- بدون میکروسکوپ نمی‌توان میکروب‌ها را دید.

adj.

nuclear

['nju:kliə]

هسته‌ای، اتمی



- ❖ When something is nuclear, it relates to the division or joining of atoms.
- nuclear power plants provide inexpensive energy to cities.
- نیروگاه‌های هسته‌ای انرژی ارزانی را برای شهرها فراهم می‌کنند.

v.

portray

[pɔ:'treɪ]

به تصویرکشیدن



- ❖ To portray something means to describe it or show it in a picture.
- Her picture portrayed the house she grew up in when she was little.
- تصویر او خانه‌ای را توصیف می‌کند که در بچگی در آن بزرگ شده‌است.



v.

**rotate**

[rəu'teɪt]

چرخیدن



- ❖ To rotate something means to turn it around in a circle.
- An airplane's propellers rotate quickly to help it fly.

➤ ملخ‌های هواپیما به سرعت می‌چرخند تا در پرواز به آن کمک کنند.

n.

**souvenir**

[,su:v(ə)'niə]

سوغاتی، یادگاری



- ❖ A souvenir is something you buy to remind you of a place or event.
- I bought a Russian doll as a souvenir from my trip to Moscow.

➤ برای یادگاری سفرم به مسکو یک عروسک چوبی برای سوغات خریدم.

n.

**submarine**

[,sʌbm(ə)'ri:n]

زیردریایی



- ❖ A submarine is a boat that can go underwater for long periods of time.
- The submarine dove under the sea so the enemy couldn't see it.

➤ زیردریایی زیر آب رفت تا دشمن نتواند آن را ببیند.

v.

**trace**

[treɪs]

دنبال کردن، ردیابی کردن



- ❖ To trace something means to follow over it with the eyes or a finger.
- He traced over the graph with his finger.

➤ او با انگشتش مسیر نمودار را دنبال کرد.

# Exercise 1

## PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to show in a picture  
a. portray      b. trace      c. gaze      d. rotate
- something that causes an event  
a. souvenir      b. certificate      c. circumstance      d. criticism
- a feeling of sadness  
a. frown      b. grief      c. bomb      d. glance
- a box for burying dead people  
a. groom      b. license      c. coffin      d. cope
- a device for making small things look bigger  
a. submarine      b. microscope      c. devastate      d. nuclear

## PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- certificate  
a. a document for permission      b. something bought to remind of a place  
c. between two sizes      d. a document that claims a fact
- cope  
a. to deal with a difficult situation      b. to look at something quickly  
c. to completely destroy something      d. to turn around in a circle
- trace  
a. to look at for a long time      b. to follow over with the eyes  
c. to show in a picture      d. to express dislike or sadness
- groom  
a. a boat that can go under water      b. a box used to bury dead people  
c. a man about to be married      d. something that causes an event
- bomb  
a. to go between two places      b. the act of finding fault with someone  
c. an object that explodes      d. a feeling of sadness because of death

## Choose the word that is a better fit for each blank.

**1. traced / bomb**

The engineer \_\_\_\_\_ a line with his finger to where he thought the police officers would find the \_\_\_\_\_.

**2. nuclear / circumstances**

The politician said that there were many \_\_\_\_\_ that lead to the US using a \_\_\_\_\_ weapon on Japan.

**3. glance / certificate**

I was so busy that I could only \_\_\_\_\_ at my daughter's \_\_\_\_\_ of achievement. I will take a better look at it when I get home.

**4. coffin / grief**

The entire family was filled with \_\_\_\_\_ as their father's \_\_\_\_\_ was slowly lowered into the ground.

**5. cope / devastated**

I was completely \_\_\_\_\_ when I heard the news of her accident. I hope that her husband can \_\_\_\_\_ with the situation.

**6. rotated / souvenir**

Maria \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ so that all of her classmates could get a good view of it.

**7. frowned / criticism**

After receiving a great deal of \_\_\_\_\_ about her idea, Katie \_\_\_\_\_ but was determined not to quit.

**8. gazed / microscope**

Tony \_\_\_\_\_ at the pictures of the new forms of bacteria that were discovered. Curious, he viewed samples of them through a powerful \_\_\_\_\_.

**9. submarine / license**

Eric did not have a \_\_\_\_\_ to operate the sophisticated \_\_\_\_\_.

**10. groom / portrayed**

Lisa \_\_\_\_\_ her new \_\_\_\_\_ as the perfect husband. But we all knew that he had many faults.



# An Interesting Life

A man looked through some boxes with his grandson. They were filled with old photographs and objects that **portrayed** important events from the grandfather's life. He wished to share the **circumstances** behind each event with his grandson.

The grandson, however, thought his grandfather's stories were boring. The grandfather **coped** with this. He ignored his grandson's **criticism**.

He took a photo from the box. "That's the **submarine** I was on during the war," he explained. The grandson **gazed** at it.

The grandfather **glanced** at the next picture and **frowned**. It showed a row of **coffins**. His grandson noticed the **grief** in his grandfather's face.

"What is it?" the boy inquired.

"This was after a **nuclear bomb** was dropped," the grandfather answered. "It **devastated** a city."

Next the grandfather pulled a toy **microscope** from the box and **rotated** it in his hand.

"Where did you get that?" the grandson asked.

"This is a **souvenir** I bought at the science museum," the grandfather said.

Now the boy was really interested. He started to understand that his grandfather was telling him a larger story. It was the story of his grandfather's life.

He got another photo. It showed a young bride and **groom**. They were very happy. A **certificate** was attached to the photo. The boy couldn't read it, but he **traced** his finger over paper.

"What's this from, Granddad?" he asked.

"That's my marriage **license** from the day I married your grandmother," the grandfather said.

"Wow!" said the boy. "Granddad, now I know all about your life!"



## یک زندگی جالب

مردی با نوه خود چند صندوق را می‌گشت. صندوق‌ها پر از تصاویر و چیزهای قدیمی بودند که رویدادهای مهمی از زندگی پدربزرگ را نشان می‌دادند. او آرزو داشت که شرایط پشت هر کدام از آن رویدادها را با نوه خود به اشتراک بگذارد.

هرچند، نوه، فکر می‌کرد که داستان‌های پدربزرگش خسته کننده هستند. پدربزرگ از پس این موضوع برآمد. او انتقاد نوه‌اش را نادیده می‌گرفت. او یک عکس را از جعبه درآورد. توضیح داد: "این یک زیردریایی است که در جنگ در آن بودم." نوه به آن خیره شد.

پدربزرگ نگاهی به عکس بعدی انداخت و اخم کرد. ردیف تابوت‌ها را نشان می‌داد. نوه‌اش متوجه غم درون چهره‌ی پدربزرگ شد. پسر پرسید: "این چیه؟" پدربزرگ جواب داد: "این بعد از این بود که بمبی هسته‌ای انداخته شد." "یک شهر را نابود کرد"

بعد، پدربزرگ میکروسکوپی اسباب بازی را از داخل صندوق بیرون آورد و آن را در دستانش چرخاند. نوه پرسید: "از کجا آن را گرفتی؟" پدربزرگ گفت: "این یک سوغاتی است که از موزه علوم گرفتم."

حالا پسر واقعا علاقه‌مند بود. او شروع کرد به فهمیدن اینکه پدربزرگش دارد برایش یک داستان بزرگتر تعریف می‌کند. داستان زندگی پدربزرگش بود. عکس دیگری برداشت. عروس و دامادی جوان را نشان می‌داد.

آنها خیلی خوشحال بودند. یک گواهی به عکس الحاق شده بود. پسر نمی‌توانست آن را بخواند، اما انگشتش را روی کاغذ کشید. پرسید: "این مال کجاست پدر بزرگ؟" پدر بزرگ گفت: "گواهی ازدواج من هست، روزی که با مامان بزرگت ازدواج کردم" پسر گفت: "وای! حالا همه چیز رو راجع به زندگی تو می‌دونم"



## PART A Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_\_ The photographs portrayed important events from the grandson's life.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_ The grandfather explained that the picture of the coffins was taken after a nuclear bomb devastated a city.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_ The first photo the grandson gazed at was of a submarine.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_ The toy microscope was a souvenir from a science museum.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_ The certificate was from the day the grandson was born.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_ The groom and bride in the last photo were happy.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## PART B Answer the questions.

1. Which of the following was NOT in the box?
  - a. Photographs
  - b. Souvenirs
  - c. Letters
  - d. A marriage license
2. What did the grandfather say he did during the war?
  - a. Worked on a submarine
  - b. Made nuclear bombs
  - c. Worked in a souvenir shop
  - d. Took photographs
3. How did the grandson feel at first about the circumstances behind each photograph?
  - a. He frowned.
  - b. He was full of grief.
  - c. He was bored.
  - d. He was interested.
4. All of the following are true about the toy microscope EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. it was a souvenir
  - b. the grandfather rotated it in his hand
  - c. the grandson only glanced at it
  - d. the grandfather bought it at a museum





n.

## appliance

[ə'plaiənt(s)]

اسباب، وسیله



- ❖ An appliance is a piece of equipment used for jobs in the home.
- Many homes have appliances like ovens, toasters and refrigerators.
- بسیاری از خانه‌ها لوازم خانگی مانند اجاق گاز، توستر و یخچال دارند.

n.

## basin

['beɪsn]

تشت، لگن



- ❖ A basin is large bowl for washing things. A sink is sometimes called a basin.
- She filled the basin with water and washed her face.
- او تشت را از آب پر کرد و صورتش را شست.

n.

## broom

[bru:m]

جارو، تی



- ❖ A broom is a brush with a long handle used for cleaning floors.
- My father usually uses a broom to sweep away dust in the basement.
- پدرم معمولاً از جارویی استفاده می‌کند تا گرد و غبار را در زیرزمین بربود.

n.

## caterpillar

['kætəpɪlə]

کرم حشره، کرم صدپا، کرم ابریشم



- ❖ A caterpillar is a small insect that looks like a worm and eats plants.
- After eating a lot of leaves, caterpillars change into butterflies.
- کرم‌های حشره بعد از خوردن برگ‌های زیادی به پروانه تبدیل شدند.



n.

**cupboard**

['kʌbəd]

کابینت، قفسه



❖ A cupboard is a piece of furniture that is used to store food or household items.

➤ We put all of our dishes and food in the cupboards.

➤ ما همه ظرفها و غذایمان را در قفسهها می‌گذاریم.

adj.

**delicate**

['delɪkət]

ظریف، آسیب پذیر



❖ If something or someone is delicate, they are easy to break or harm.

➤ You should hold the baby carefully because she's very delicate.

➤ باید با دقت نوزاد را بگیرید چون او بسیار آسیب‌پذیر است.

v.

**emerge**

[i'mɜːdʒ]

بیرون آمدن، ظاهر شدن



❖ To emerge from something means to come out of it.

➤ The hand suddenly emerged from the grave.

➤ ناگهان دست از قبر بیرون آمد.

n.

**handicap**

['hændɪkæp]

معلولیت، نقص عضو



❖ A handicap is a condition that limits someone's mental or physical abilities.

➤ Joe has a slight handicap, so he uses a walker to get around.

➤ جو معلولیت کمی دارد، پس برای رفتن به جایی از واکر استفاده می‌کند.



n.

hook

[huk]

قلاب



- ❖ A hook is a sharp curved piece of metal used for catching or holding things.
- The fish went after the sharp hook.

➤ ماهی به دنبال قلاب تیز حرکت کرد.

v.

hop

[hɒp]

پریدن



- ❖ To hop means to jump a short distance.
- The kangaroo quickly hopped away from danger.

➤ کانگرو به سرعت با پریدن از خطر دور شد.

n.

laundry

['lɔ:ndri]

لباس برای شستن، لباس شویی



- ❖ laundry is clothes that have been or need to be washed.
- He folded the clean laundry and put the dirty laundry in a basket.

➤ او لباس‌های تمیز را تا کرد و لباس‌های کثیف را در سبد گذاشت.

v.

pursue

[pə'sju:]

تعقیب کردن، دنبال کردن



- ❖ To pursue someone or something is to chase or follow them.
- The mother pursued her young child down the hill.

➤ مادر به دنبال بچه خود به پایین تپه رفت.





adj.

reluctant

[rɪ'lʌkt(ə)nt]

بی میل

- ❖ If someone is reluctant, they do not want to do something.
- She was reluctant to eat the meager breakfast.

➤ او مایل نبود صبحانه ناکافی را بخورد.



n.

sleeve

[sli:v]

آستین

- ❖ sleeves are the part of a shirt where your arms go.
- Ryan bought a new shirt with long sleeves to keep his arms warm.

➤ ریان پیراهن آستین بلند جدیدی خرید تا دست‌هایش گرم بمانند.



n.

spine

[spain]

ستون فقرات

- ❖ The spine is the bone that runs up and down the middle of the back.
- Our spine helps us to stand up nice and straight.

➤ ستون فقرات ما در خوب و صاف ایستادن به ما کمک می‌کند.



n.

stain

[stein]

لکه

- ❖ A stain is a dirty mark that is difficult to clean.
- He had a red stain on the collar of his shirt.

➤ روی یقه پیراهنش یک لکه قرمز بود.

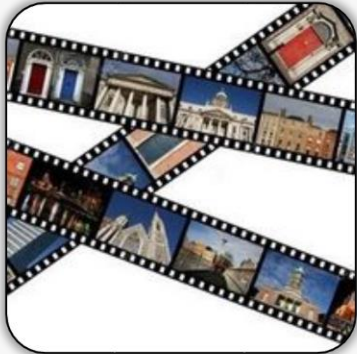


n.

**strip**

[strip]

نوار، باریکه



- ❖ A strip is a long, narrow piece of material or land.
- He had long strips of film that held images of his trip abroad.
- او نوارهای بلندی از فیلم داشت که حاوی تصاویر سفرش به خارج بود.

v.

**swear**

[sweə]

سوگند خوردن، قسم خوردن



- ❖ To swear means to promise to do something.
- I will put my hand on the Bible and swear to do my best for the country.
- دستم را روی کتاب مقدس می‌گذارم و سوگند می‌خورم که تمام تلاشم را برای کشور بکنم.

v.

**swing**

[swɪŋ]

نوسان داشتن، تاب خوردن



- ❖ To swing something means to move it back and forth or from side to side.
- He can swing a golf club very powerfully.
- او می‌تواند چوب گلف را بسیار قدرتمند بچرخاند.

v.

**utilize**

['ju:tilaɪz]

استفاده کردن



- ❖ To utilize something means to use it for a specific purpose.
- They utilized a pair of scissors to cut the ribbon.
- آنها از قیچی برای بریدن روبان استفاده کردند.

# Exercise 1

## PART A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- clothes that need to be washed  
a. spine                      b. appliance                      c. laundry                      d. cupboard
- easy to break  
a. emerge                      b. delicate                      c. basin                      d. pursue
- a brush with a long handle used for cleaning floors  
a. handicap                      b. broom                      c. strip                      d. hook
- to promise something  
a. swear                      b. hop                      c. utilize                      d. swing
- not wanting to do something  
a. sleeve                      b. stain                      c. caterpillar                      d. reluctant

## PART B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- pursue  
a. a bone in the middle of the back                      b. a bowl for washing things  
c. to come out of something                      d. to chase after something
- appliance  
a. a piece of equipment used in the home  
b. a section of cloth used to cover a floor  
c. a wooden box used for storing things  
d. a dirty mark that is difficult to clean
- utilize  
a. to jump a short distance                      b. an insect that looks like a worm  
c. to move something back and forth                      d. to use something for a specific purpose
- handicap  
a. a curved metal for holding things                      b. something that is easy to break  
c. a promise to do something                      d. a condition that limits abilities
- swing  
a. to move something back and forth                      b. a curved piece of metal  
c. a brush with a long handle                      d. clothes that need to be washed



**Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.**

1. Some animals, such as insects, do not have a bone in the middle of the back.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. John filled the bowl for washing things with water so he could wash his face.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. She was hungry so she looked for a snack in the furniture where food is kept.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The rabbit jumped away from the hunter's dogs.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The swimmer came out of the dirty river covered in dark brown water.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Mary put her flowers in a pot and then hung it from a curved piece of metal.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The insect that looks like a worm eats the leaves on a tree.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. William used a long, narrow piece of cloth to tie the sticks together.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. The baseball player rolled up the pieces of material that cover his arms so they wouldn't get dirty.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. We tried using soap and hot water but couldn't get the dirty mark out of my jacket.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# The Kitten and the Caterpillar

Katie the kitten liked to play. One day, Cory the **caterpillar emerged** from a hole in the wall while Katie was playing in the living room.

“Hey!” Katie yelled. “Do you want to play with me?”

Cory was **reluctant**. He said, “I’d rather not play with you. I have several **handicaps**. My body is very **delicate**. Your claws are as sharp as **hooks**. You might cut me. Plus, I have no bones, not even a **spine**. You could easily hurt me.”

“I **swear** that I won’t hurt you,” Katie said.

“No, I don’t want to,” he said again. He **hopped** from the wall, but Katie **pursued** him.

Cory ran into the kitchen and into the **cupboard**, but Katie chased closely behind. Katie knocked **appliances** to the floor. Plates fell into the sink and broke in the **basin**.

Then he ran into a bedroom. Some **laundry** was on the floor. Cory hid under a shirt, but Katie saw him. She jumped on the shirt. Her paws left **stains** on the cloth, and her claws ripped the **sleeves** into **strips**.

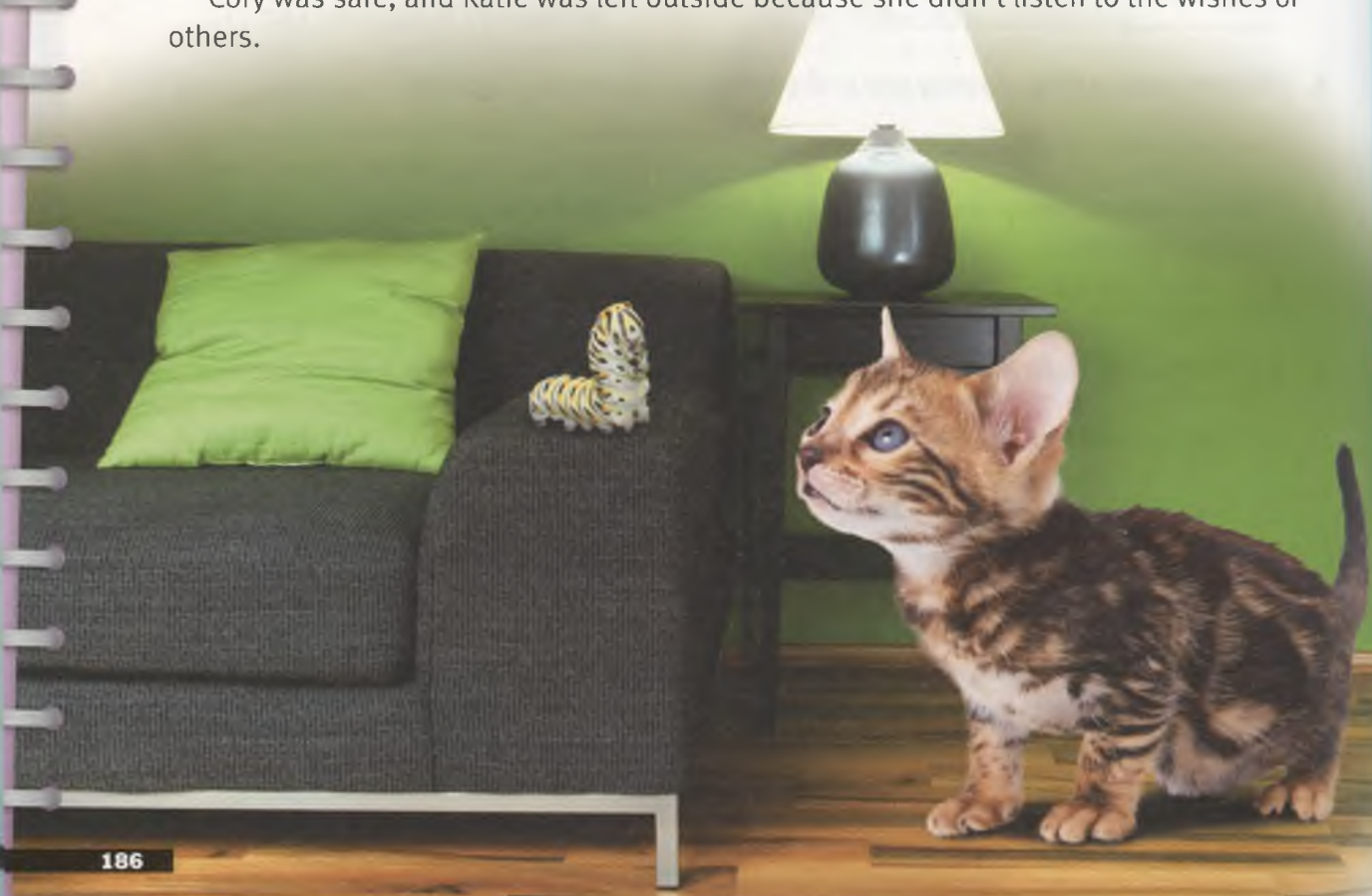
However, Cory escaped. He **utilized** a small crack in the floor to hide. But Katie saw him.

“Now you are trapped!” said Katie.

Cory tried to avoid Katie’s claws. He moved his body as far into the hole as possible. He didn’t know how he’d get out of the hole.

Just then, Katie’s owner came home. She saw that the house was a mess. She took a **broom** and **swung** it at Katie. She chased Katie out of the house.

Cory was safe, and Katie was left outside because she didn’t listen to the wishes of others.



## بچه گربه و کرم ابریشم

کتی، بچه گربه، بازی کردن را دوست داشت. یک روز، در حالی که کتی داشت داخل اتاق پذیرایی بازی می‌کرد، کرم ابریشم، از سوراخی داخل دیوار ظاهر شد. کتی داد زد: "سلام! می‌خوای با من بازی کنی؟"

کرمی تمایلی نداشت. گفت: "ترجیح می‌دم که با تو بازی نکنم. من نواقصی دارم. بدن من خیلی ظریف است" چنگال‌های تو مثل قلاب تیز هستند. ممکنه من رو ببری. بعلاوه، من هیچ استخوانی ندارم، حتی ستون فقرات هم ندارم. به راحتی می‌تونم به من آسیب بزنی.

کتی گفت: "قسم می‌خورم به تو آسیب نخواهم زد" کرم دوباره گفت: "نه، نمی‌خوام با تو بازی کنم" از روی دیوار پرید، اما کتی او را دنبال کرد. کرمی به داخل آشپزخانه و داخل کابینت فرار کرد، اما کتی نزدیک به او تعقیبش می‌کرد.

کتی وسایل آشپزخانه را زمین انداخت. بشقابها داخل سینک ریختند و در آبگیر شکستند. بعد کرم به داخل اتاق خواب فرار کرد. چند لباس کثیف روی زمین بود.

کرمی زیر یک پیراهن مخفی شد، اما کتی او را دید. روی پیراهن پرید. پنجه‌هایش روی لباس لکه‌هایی به جا گذاشتند و چنگالهای او آستین‌ها را ریش ریش کردند. با این حال، کرمی فرار کرد. از ترکی کوچک در کف اتاق برای پنهان شدن استفاده کرد. ولی کتی او را دید.

کتی گفت: "حالا گیر افتادی!" کرمی سعی کرد که از چنگال‌های کتی دور بماند. بدنش را تا جایی که ممکن بود درون سوراخ برد. او نمی‌دانست چطور باید از سوراخ بیرون بیاید. درست در همان موقع، صاحب کتی به خانه آمد. دید که خانه به هم ریخته است. جارویی برداشت و آن را به سوی کتی تاب کرد. او کتی را تا بیرون خانه تعقیب کرد. کرمی در امان بود، و کتی بیرون خانه رها شد زیرا او به خواسته‌های دیگران گوش نمی‌داد.



**PART A** Mark each statement T for true or F for false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_ Katie pursued Cory around the house.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ The caterpillar had only one bone, his spine.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ Katie swore not to hurt Cory.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ Cory hopped off the counter and ran into the cupboard.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ Katie's dirty paws stained the shirt.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_ Katie's owner chased Katie out of the house.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART B** Answer the questions.

1. Which is NOT a reason that Cory was reluctant about playing with Katie?
  - a. Katie had dirty paws.
  - b. Katie had sharp claws.
  - c. His body was delicate.
  - d. He had several handicaps.
2. Where was Katie playing when Cory emerged from the wall?
  - a. On the counter
  - b. In some laundry
  - c. In the living room
  - d. In the kitchen
3. Katie did all of the following damage EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. knock appliances on the floor
  - b. break plates in the basin
  - c. crack the kitchen door
  - d. rip the sleeves of a shirt into strips
4. What did Katie's owner swing at her?
  - a. A broom
  - b. A shirt
  - c. Appliances
  - d. Laundry

# Appendix

## SPORTS

### Indoor Sports



basketball



boxing



martial arts



ping-pong



wrestling



yoga

### Outdoor Sports



archery



baseball



football



soccer



tennis



volleyball

### Winter Sports



ice skating



skiing



snowboarding

## ANIMALS

### Desert



camel



coyote



lizard



mountain lion



scorpion



vulture

### Rain Forest



alligator



flamingo



gorilla



hummingbird



panther



parrot



**Grasslands**



buffalo

giraffe

hippopotamus

hyena

ostrich

rhinoceros

**Polar Lands**



otter

penguin

polar bear

reindeer

seal

wolf

**Sea**



blowfish

jellyfish

octopus

sea horse

sea urchin

seagull

shark

squid

starfish

whale

**Woodlands**



beaver

bobcat

deer

mole

opossum

porcupine

robin

skunk

squirrel

woodpecker



## Bugs



beetle



butterfly



dragonfly



caterpillar



cricket



firefly



grasshopper



ladybug



mosquito



moth

## Baby Animals

- bird ⇒ nestling
- duck ⇒ duckling
- pig ⇒ piglet
- chicken ⇒ chick
- fish ⇒ fry
- sheep ⇒ lamb
- cow ⇒ calf
- frog ⇒ tadpole
- dog ⇒ pup
- horse ⇒ foal

## FOOD



apple pie



cereal



fish and chips



french fries



hamburger



hot dog



ice cream cone



salad



sandwich



taco

## FRUITS



apricot



avocado



cherry



coconut



fig



grapefruit



peach



pear



pineapple



pomegranate

NUTS



almond



chestnut



hazel nut



peanut



pecan



pine nuts



pistachio



walnut

MEAT, POULTRY, AND SEAFOOD



bacon



beef



chicken



crab



lobster



oyster



pork



salmon



sausage



shrimp

VEGETABLES



broccoli



cabbage



carrot



celery



cucumber



eggplant



garlic



onion



potato



pumpkin



FLOWERS



carnation



chrysanthemum



daisy



lily



lotus



pansy



rose



sunflower



tulip



marigold

TREES



bamboo



maple tree



oak tree



palm tree



pine tree



willow tree



## A

abandon ..... 44  
 abnormal ..... 68  
 aboard ..... 80  
 aborigine ..... 140  
 absence ..... 62  
 accommodate ..... 134  
 accustomed ..... 128  
 ache ..... 170  
 acknowledge ..... 164  
 acquaint ..... 32  
 acquire ..... 14  
 adolescent ..... 98  
 affair ..... 92  
 affection ..... 104  
 affirm ..... 128  
 agency ..... 104  
 ail ..... 56  
 alert ..... 38  
 alley ..... 20  
 ally ..... 56  
 aloud ..... 62  
 alter ..... 158  
 ambassador ..... 164  
 ambitious ..... 44  
 anniversary ..... 50  
 anticipate ..... 74  
 appliance ..... 182  
 apprentice ..... 86  
 aptitude ..... 98  
 arctic ..... 170  
 arise ..... 8  
 arithmetic ..... 50  
 armor ..... 110  
 ash ..... 104  
 ashamed ..... 50  
 aside ..... 158  
 assembly ..... 92  
 assure ..... 86  
 astonished ..... 128  
 autumn ..... 158  
 awkward ..... 14  
 ax ..... 20

## B

baggage ..... 146  
 bald ..... 62  
 bamboo ..... 68  
 ban ..... 140  
 bandage ..... 86  
 bang ..... 128  
 bark ..... 44  
 barrel ..... 74  
 basin ..... 182  
 bay ..... 44  
 beam ..... 74  
 bench ..... 116  
 beneath ..... 122  
 benefactor ..... 8  
 bitter ..... 80  
 blacksmith ..... 8  
 blanket ..... 62  
 blaze ..... 110  
 bleed ..... 86  
 blend ..... 158  
 bless ..... 92  
 blonde ..... 164  
 bloom ..... 26  
 blossom ..... 68  
 boast ..... 56  
 bomb ..... 176  
 bond ..... 86  
 boom ..... 110  
 bounce ..... 56  
 brilliant ..... 44  
 broadcast ..... 38  
 broom ..... 182  
 bulb ..... 146  
 bullet ..... 80  
 bulletin ..... 38  
 bully ..... 56  
 bump ..... 38  
 bunch ..... 20  
 bundle ..... 146  
 burst ..... 50

## C

canal ..... 170  
 carbohydrate ..... 56  
 caretaker ..... 14  
 carpenter ..... 50  
 casual ..... 74  
 caterpillar ..... 182  
 cattle ..... 146  
 caution ..... 74  
 cautious ..... 140  
 cemetery ..... 32  
 cereal ..... 92  
 certificate ..... 176  
 charitable ..... 8  
 cheerful ..... 92  
 chef ..... 86  
 chemist ..... 170  
 chill ..... 170  
 chimney ..... 8  
 chin ..... 44  
 chop ..... 38  
 chore ..... 20  
 circulate ..... 152  
 circumstance ..... 176  
 circus ..... 134  
 clan ..... 128  
 cliff ..... 110  
 closet ..... 38  
 coal ..... 50  
 coffin ..... 176  
 coincide ..... 134  
 collapse ..... 158  
 commission ..... 134  
 compact ..... 26  
 compass ..... 68  
 compensate ..... 8  
 complaint ..... 44  
 compliment ..... 98  
 confess ..... 140  
 confine ..... 104  
 confront ..... 116  
 congress ..... 170  
 conquer ..... 164  
 consequent ..... 152

console ..... 38  
 contrary ..... 74  
 cope ..... 176  
 cottage ..... 140  
 couch ..... 50  
 crawl ..... 56  
 creep ..... 62  
 criticism ..... 176  
 crown ..... 86  
 crush ..... 158  
 cub ..... 122  
 cupboard ..... 182  
 curl ..... 26  
 curse ..... 32  
 curve ..... 158

## D

dairy ..... 170  
 daisy ..... 116  
 dawn ..... 122  
 daytime ..... 140  
 deaf ..... 44  
 decay ..... 26  
 deceive ..... 14  
 decent ..... 20  
 defeat ..... 56  
 deliberate ..... 74  
 delicate ..... 182  
 departure ..... 86  
 derive ..... 152  
 descend ..... 170  
 desperate ..... 140  
 dessert ..... 26  
 devastate ..... 176  
 devil ..... 80  
 dial ..... 56  
 dialect ..... 68  
 diameter ..... 92  
 diligent ..... 86  
 dim ..... 128  
 dip ..... 26  
 discourage ..... 14  
 disgrace ..... 20

# Index

disguise ..... 32  
disgusting ..... 158  
dishonest ..... 68  
dismiss ..... 104  
dispute ..... 116  
dissatisfied ..... 122  
dissolve ..... 74  
distant ..... 26  
district ..... 38  
divorce ..... 62  
dominant ..... 56  
dose ..... 134  
drag ..... 164  
drain ..... 158  
drawer ..... 38  
drift ..... 80  
drip ..... 50  
drown ..... 152  
dwarf ..... 68  
dye ..... 134  
dynasty ..... 152

## E

ease ..... 122  
eclipse ..... 26  
ecosystem ..... 68  
elbow ..... 20  
elegant ..... 50  
embrace ..... 158  
emerge ..... 182  
emperor ..... 86  
emphasis ..... 128  
encounter ..... 8  
endure ..... 38  
enforce ..... 80  
enthusiastic ..... 44  
envy ..... 159  
erupt ..... 104  
evident ..... 122  
exaggerate ..... 164  
exceed ..... 8  
execute ..... 39  
expedition ..... 44

explode ..... 74  
exploit ..... 92  
extent ..... 134

## F

fable ..... 128  
fabric ..... 50  
fade ..... 140  
fairy ..... 26  
fake ..... 14  
famine ..... 92  
fancy ..... 32  
fasten ..... 74  
fatal ..... 68  
fate ..... 104  
feast ..... 128  
fiber ..... 87  
fierce ..... 140  
fireworks ..... 159  
flame ..... 110  
flashlight ..... 32  
flee ..... 146  
flour ..... 159  
forge ..... 8  
fountain ..... 80  
fraction ..... 152  
frost ..... 152  
frown ..... 176  
fuse ..... 159

## G

gamble ..... 140  
gaze ..... 176  
gender ..... 134  
germ ..... 75  
ginger ..... 159  
glance ..... 176  
glow ..... 128  
grace ..... 26  
grasp ..... 39  
grateful ..... 20  
graze ..... 146

greed ..... 146  
grief ..... 177  
grocer ..... 170  
groom ..... 177

## H

hail ..... 122  
handicap ..... 182  
harbor ..... 80  
harvest ..... 92  
hatred ..... 14  
headline ..... 134  
herd ..... 146  
heritage ..... 164  
hesitate ..... 170  
highlands ..... 51  
hinder ..... 98  
hollow ..... 129  
hood ..... 32  
hook ..... 182  
hop ..... 182  
horizon ..... 45  
horrible ..... 87  
horror ..... 116  
howl ..... 122  
humble ..... 8  
hut ..... 14

## I

illusion ..... 152  
imitate ..... 62  
impatient ..... 68  
impolite ..... 87  
incident ..... 116  
independence ..... 110  
infant ..... 62  
inferior ..... 14  
informal ..... 134  
inhabit ..... 80  
inhabitant ..... 32  
initiate ..... 146  
inquire ..... 135

instinct ..... 129  
institution ..... 171  
insult ..... 164  
invade ..... 152  
invasion ..... 110  
iron ..... 9  
irritate ..... 20  
ivory ..... 51

## J

jealous ..... 159  
jog ..... 171  
joint ..... 129  
journalism ..... 98  
jury ..... 98  
justice ..... 98

## K

kid ..... 20  
kidnap ..... 62  
kit ..... 75  
kneel ..... 87  
knight ..... 110

## L

ladder ..... 9  
lane ..... 146  
laundry ..... 183  
lava ..... 104  
lawn ..... 141  
leaf ..... 69  
leak ..... 129  
leap ..... 122  
leisure ..... 27  
liberty ..... 98  
license ..... 177  
lieutenant ..... 152  
lightning ..... 110  
literary ..... 98  
lodge ..... 14  
loose ..... 21



loyal ..... 45  
 luggage ..... 146  
 luxury ..... 87

**M**

magnificent ..... 122  
 mankind ..... 27  
 manuscript ..... 69  
 marine ..... 153  
 marsh ..... 69  
 massive ..... 87  
 mayor ..... 45  
 meanwhile ..... 164  
 merchant ..... 171  
 mercy ..... 57  
 merit ..... 153  
 merry ..... 92  
 messenger ..... 135  
 microscope ..... 177  
 mill ..... 51  
 millionaire ..... 81  
 miserable ..... 104  
 mist ..... 116  
 modest ..... 9  
 mow ..... 141  
 mutual ..... 45

**N**

nap ..... 62  
 navigate ..... 104  
 navy ..... 153  
 necessity ..... 123  
 necklace ..... 164  
 needle ..... 51  
 neglect ..... 15  
 nerve ..... 147  
 newcomer ..... 15  
 noble ..... 165  
 nod ..... 57  
 nourish ..... 32  
 nowhere ..... 63

nuclear ..... 177  
 nut ..... 93

**O**

object ..... 116  
 occupy ..... 9  
 offend ..... 21  
 offense ..... 15  
 opponent ..... 57  
 optimist ..... 147  
 originate ..... 105  
 orphan ..... 116  
 outcome ..... 123  
 outlaw ..... 141  
 overlook ..... 15  
 overnight ..... 21  
 overweight ..... 45

**P**

panic ..... 87  
 parade ..... 147  
 pardon ..... 93  
 passion ..... 27  
 paste ..... 159  
 pat ..... 63  
 patience ..... 69  
 pave ..... 147  
 peer ..... 135  
 penny ..... 9  
 perfume ..... 69  
 persist ..... 21  
 phantom ..... 147  
 pharaoh ..... 93  
 pharmacy ..... 98  
 physician ..... 129  
 pile ..... 123  
 pill ..... 99  
 pillow ..... 27  
 pine ..... 21  
 pirate ..... 32  
 plot ..... 116

poke ..... 171  
 polar ..... 153  
 polish ..... 51  
 pond ..... 69  
 port ..... 81  
 portable ..... 147  
 portrait ..... 135  
 portray ..... 177  
 pose ..... 135  
 poster ..... 147  
 postpone ..... 171  
 preach ..... 9  
 precious ..... 165  
 pregnant ..... 117  
 prejudice ..... 165  
 presume ..... 99  
 priority ..... 87  
 privacy ..... 99  
 profound ..... 123  
 prospect ..... 141  
 prosper ..... 9  
 proverb ..... 69  
 province ..... 9  
 publication ..... 33  
 puff ..... 75  
 pulse ..... 27  
 punishment ..... 99  
 purse ..... 141  
 pursue ..... 183  
 pursuit ..... 69

**Q**

quarrel ..... 57

**R**

rag ..... 75  
 rage ..... 117  
 ranch ..... 135  
 ray ..... 153  
 rear ..... 39  
 rebel ..... 110

receipt ..... 159  
 recite ..... 69  
 refresh ..... 27  
 refuge ..... 45  
 relief ..... 63  
 reluctant ..... 183  
 remainder ..... 105  
 repay ..... 15  
 reproduce ..... 63  
 resign ..... 153  
 restore ..... 45  
 retreat ..... 111  
 retrieve ..... 105  
 revenge ..... 117  
 revolution ..... 111  
 rhyme ..... 63  
 riddle ..... 33  
 ridiculous ..... 15  
 ripe ..... 93  
 rival ..... 57  
 roast ..... 93  
 robe ..... 87  
 rod ..... 141  
 rot ..... 33  
 rotate ..... 177  
 routine ..... 93  
 rub ..... 45  
 rumor ..... 165

**S**

sacrifice ..... 129  
 satisfaction ..... 9  
 satisfactory ..... 15  
 scar ..... 21  
 scared ..... 33  
 scatter ..... 75  
 scent ..... 75  
 scheme ..... 93  
 scold ..... 87  
 scratch ..... 147  
 seize ..... 123  
 seldom ..... 141  
 senator ..... 39



- sensation ..... 21  
 senses ..... 45  
 sensible ..... 99  
 sew ..... 51  
 shallow ..... 105  
 shame ..... 117  
 shave ..... 141  
 shed ..... 51  
 shepherd ..... 15  
 sheriff ..... 81  
 shortly ..... 33  
 sigh ..... 117  
 sin ..... 165  
 skeleton ..... 33  
 skull ..... 39  
 sled ..... 21  
 sleeve ..... 183  
 slice ..... 99  
 slim ..... 93  
 slope ..... 105  
 sneak ..... 117  
 sneeze ..... 27  
 sore ..... 57  
 sorrow ..... 99  
 souvenir ..... 177  
 span ..... 105  
 spare ..... 117  
 spear ..... 111  
 spectacle ..... 165  
 spice ..... 27  
 spine ..... 183  
 splash ..... 171  
 spoil ..... 33  
 squeeze ..... 123  
 stack ..... 165  
 stain ..... 183  
 startle ..... 81  
 starve ..... 33  
 steel ..... 75  
 steep ..... 111  
 steer ..... 135  
 stem ..... 117  
 stiff ..... 129  
 sting ..... 57  
 stir ..... 39  
 stove ..... 93  
 strain ..... 57  
 straw ..... 99  
 strip ..... 183  
 stripe ..... 135  
 stroke ..... 129  
 stubborn ..... 171  
 submarine ..... 177  
 suburb ..... 171  
 suck ..... 63  
 suicide ..... 153  
 summit ..... 111  
 superstition ..... 105  
 supper ..... 117  
 supreme ..... 123  
 suspicious ..... 165  
 sustain ..... 9  
 swear ..... 183  
 sweat ..... 81  
 swell ..... 99  
 swift ..... 75  
 swing ..... 183  
 sympathy ..... 105  
 symphony ..... 147
- T**
- tame ..... 135  
 tap ..... 39  
 tease ..... 21  
 tempt ..... 135  
 tender ..... 117  
 terrific ..... 123  
 terrified ..... 141  
 theft ..... 93  
 thread ..... 51  
 thrill ..... 33  
 thunder ..... 111  
 tide ..... 171  
 tidy ..... 99  
 tin ..... 165  
 torture ..... 57  
 toss ..... 75  
 trace ..... 177
- U**
- underlying ..... 153  
 underneath ..... 39  
 unify ..... 81  
 upwards ..... 51  
 urgent ..... 63  
 utilize ..... 183
- V**
- valentine ..... 21  
 vanish ..... 63  
 vase ..... 165  
 venture ..... 15  
 vessel ..... 81  
 veterinarian ..... 45  
 via ..... 153  
 vibrate ..... 105  
 vital ..... 123  
 voyage ..... 81
- W**
- wagon ..... 63  
 wander ..... 105  
 warrior ..... 111  
 wheat ..... 15  
 whistle ..... 27  
 wicked ..... 33  
 widow ..... 147  
 wilderness ..... 69  
 wipe ..... 159
- wire ..... 159  
 withdraw ..... 111  
 wizard ..... 141  
 wool ..... 27  
 worm ..... 39  
 worship ..... 81  
 wrestle ..... 57  
 wrinkle ..... 63
- Y**
- yield ..... 111

## Unit 1

### Exercise 1

Part A

1. d      2. b      3. b      4. b      5. d

Part B

1. a      2. d      3. d      4. b      5. d

### Exercise 2

1. b      2. c      3. c      4. d      5. b  
6. b      7. d      8. c      9. a      10. c

### Reading Comprehension

Part A

- F / Marcus occupies a house with his family.
- T
- F / A problem arises for Marcus because the blacksmith didn't pay him.
- T
- F / Marcus wasn't compensated by the blacksmith for helping him forge iron.
- T

Part B

1. d      2. c      3. c      4. b

## Unit 2

### Exercise 1

Part A

1. d      2. a      3. d      4. b      5. b

Part B

1. c      2. b      3. a      4. b      5. d

### Exercise 2

1. b, d      2. a, b      3. b, d      4. b, d      5. a, c

### Exercise 3

- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. newcomers / fake     | 2. acquire / lodge        |
| 3. repay / neglected    | 4. discouraged / offenses |
| 5. shepherd / venturing | 6. deceive / ridiculous   |
| 7. hut / wheat          | 8. caretaker / awkward    |
| 9. overlook / inferior  | 10. hatred / satisfactory |

### Reading Comprehension

Part A

- T
- F / The shepherd couldn't take the sheep outside because it was too cold.
- F / The shepherd gave a little wheat to his own sheep. But he gave the wild sheep more.
- T      5. T
- F / The shepherd knew what he had done wrong.

Part B

1. c      2. a      3. d      4. d

## Unit 3

### Exercise 1

Part A

1. b      2. c      3. b      4. a      5. a

Part B

1. a      2. c      3. b      4. a      5. d  
6. a      7. b      8. d      9. b      10. c

### Exercise 2

- |                       |                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. ax / pine          | 2. tease / offend        |
| 3. loose / overnight  | 4. chore / grateful      |
| 5. alley / sled       | 6. elbow / scar          |
| 7. bunch / persist    | 8. kids / irritate       |
| 9. decent / valentine | 10. disgrace / sensation |

## Reading Comprehension

Part A

- T
- F / Mike found a bunch of wood boards.
- F / Joe was not a decent person at the beginning of the reading.
- T
- F / Mike used nails to make sure that the pieces were not loose.
- T

Part B

1. c      2. a      3. d      4. b

## Unit 4

### Exercise 1

Part A

1. c      2. a      3. d      4. c      5. b

Part B

1. b      2. c      3. a      4. c      5. c  
6. a      7. a      8. b      9. a      10. c

### Exercise 2

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. distant / compact | 2. eclipse / pulse    |
| 3. mankind / grace   | 4. spice / desserts   |
| 5. bloom / decay     | 6. whistled / refresh |
| 7. wool / curls      | 8. leisure / fairy    |
| 9. dipped / sneezing | 10. passion / pillow  |

### Reading Comprehension

Part A

- T
- F / Tina wore a dress made of wool.
- T
- F / Tina had a passion for flowers.
- T
- F / Wilma gave Tina some cake for dessert.

Part B

1. b      2. c      3. b      4. d

## Unit 5

### Exercise 1

- |                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. cursed / scared      | 2. cemetery / skeletons  |
| 3. fancy / hood         | 4. flashlight / riddles  |
| 5. disguise / wicked    | 6. nourish / rotted      |
| 7. starving / spoiled   | 8. inhabitant / shortly  |
| 9. publication / thrill | 10. acquainted / pirates |

### Exercise 2

1. d      2. a      3. b      4. c      5. d

### Exercise 3

- |                |               |            |
|----------------|---------------|------------|
| 1. shortly     | 2. acquaint   | 3. riddles |
| 4. publication | 5. inhabitant | 6. scared  |
| 7. fancy       | 8. flashlight |            |
| 9. curse       | 10. hood      |            |

### Reading Comprehension

Part A

- F / People from places like Ireland, China, Egypt, and Mexico believed souls needed food.
- F / Many cultures believed that souls needed food for their journey to heaven.
- F / Housewives gave children food if they sang or danced.
- T      5. T
- F / Inhabitants from villages started trick-or-treating in the early 1900s.

Part B

1. b      2. c      3. c      4. a

## Unit 6

### Exercise 1

- |                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. senator / districts   | 2. tapped / skull       |
| 3. worm / underneath     | 4. consoled / broadcast |
| 5. tremendous / executed | 6. bulletin / endure    |
| 7. grasp / stir          | 8. alerted / rear       |
| 9. drawer / chop         | 10. closet / bump       |

### Exercise 2

- |               |              |             |
|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. consoled   | 2. broadcast | 3. closet   |
| 4. underneath | 5. senator   |             |
| 6. tremendous | 7. bump      | 8. district |
| 9. executed   | 10. chopped  |             |

### Exercise 3

1. b      2. a      3. c      4. a      5. d

### Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T                              2. T                              3. T  
 4. F / The cook found a pipe in the closet.  
 5. F / The cook knew he was going to hit the worm hard.  
 6. F / The worm jumped off the senator's head.

Part B

1. a      2. d      3. c      4. c

## Unit 7

### Exercise 1

Part A

1. b      2. c      3. d      4. a      5. b

Part B

1. b      2. b      3. c      4. d      5. a  
 6. a      7. d      8. c      9. a      10. c

### Exercise 2

1. c      2. a      3. d      4. c      5. a  
 6. c      7. a      8. d      9. b      10. d

### Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T  
 2. F / Patsy Ann was abandoned by her owners because she could not hear.  
 3. T                              4. T  
 5. F / A law said that all dogs had to wear a collar and get shots.  
 6. F / Patsy Ann couldn't bark at all of the ships coming in.

Part B

1. a      2. b      3. d      4. c

## Unit 8

### Exercise 1

- |                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. anniversary / elegant | 2. arithmetic / upwards |
| 3. ashamed / couch       | 4. burst / dripped      |
| 5. carpenter / sew       | 6. highlands / coal     |
| 7. needle / ivory        | 8. mill / threads       |
| 9. polish / fabric       | 10. shed / trim         |

### Exercise 2

- |               |            |         |
|---------------|------------|---------|
| 1. arithmetic | 2. threads | 3. trim |
| 4. fabric     | 5. upwards | 6. shed |

7. highlands

8. mill

9. sew

10. polished

### Exercise 3

1. d      2. b      3. a      4. d      5. b

### Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. F / Joe and Stella were poor but not ashamed.  
 2. T  
 3. F / Stella and Joe used coal to heat their shed.  
 4. F / Together, they trimmed the bushes outside.  
 5. T                              6. T

Part B

1. d      2. d      3. a      4. a

## Unit 9

### Exercise 1

Part A

1. b      2. c      3. a      4. d      5. b

Part B

1. d      2. c      3. c      4. c      5. d  
 6. a      7. a      8. d      9. b      10. b

### Exercise 2

- |                  |             |          |
|------------------|-------------|----------|
| 1. boasting      | 2. bully    |          |
| 3. Carbohydrates | 4. defeated | 5. stung |
| 6. dial          | 7. nod      | 8. rival |
| 9. strained      | 10. torture |          |

### Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T  
 2. F / Not everyone was nice to Dalton.  
 3. F / Dalton pretended that a bee stung him so he wouldn't have to play.  
 4. F / Dalton's biggest problem was Mitch.  
 5. T                              6. T

Part B

1. d      2. b      3. a      4. c

## Unit 10

### Exercise 1

1. a      2. d      3. b      4. d      5. c

### Exercise 2

1. b      2. d      3. a      4. b      5. d  
 6. b      7. b      8. d      9. c      10. a

### Exercise 3

- |                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. aloud / nowhere    | 2. infant / wrinkles    |
| 3. divorced / absence | 4. reproduce / urgent   |
| 5. sucked / patted    | 6. bald / rhymes        |
| 7. vanished / crept   | 8. wagon / kidnap       |
| 9. relief / nap       | 10. blanket / imitating |

### Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T  
 2. F / Grace was bald and had no wrinkles.  
 3. T                              4. T  
 5. F / When Anna came back from her room, she found that the infant had vanished.  
 6. F / Anna called aloud for Grace to try to find her more quickly.

Part B

1. c      2. a      3. c      4. c



## Unit 11

### Exercise 1

Part A  
1. c    2. b    3. a    4. c    5. d

Part B  
1. d    2. a    3. a    4. b    5. b

### Exercise 2

1. c    2. a    3. b    4. d    5. a

### Exercise 3

1. ecosystem / pond                      2. recited / dialect  
3. abnormal / dwarf                      4. manuscript / impatient  
5. proverbs / patience                    6. pursuit / marsh  
7. blossom / perfume                    8. dishonest / fatal  
9. leaves / bamboo                      10. wilderness / compass

### Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T  
2. F / When people entered the Magic Marsh, they never came out.  
3. F / Peter drank some water and fell asleep.  
4. T  
5. F / Peter didn't know the dwarf was dishonest.  
6. T

Part B

1. a    2. c    3. b    4. b

## Unit 12

### Exercise 1

Part A  
1. b    2. b    3. c    4. d    5. a  
6. a    7. d    8. c    9. b    10. d

Part B  
1. d    2. a    3. c    4. b    5. c

### Exercise 2

1. beam                      2. triumph                      3. caution  
4. exploded                    5. rag                              6. swift  
7. casual                      8. scent  
9. scatter                      10. puff

### Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T                              2. T  
3. F / You have to fasten the beam.  
4. F / Sam washed the germs off his hands.  
5. T                              6. T

Part B

1. c    2. b    3. d    4. a

## Unit 13

### Exercise 1

1. voyage / vessel                      2. port / aboard  
3. sweat / sheriff                      4. millionaire / fountain  
5. harbor / worship                    6. inhabit / enforce  
7. trigger / bullets                    8. unify / march  
9. startle / devil                      10. bitter / drift

### Exercise 2

1. voyage                      2. aboard                      3. trigger  
4. sheriff                      5. fountain                    6. startle  
7. unify                      8. harbor  
9. inhabit                      10. devil

### Exercise 3

1. c    2. a    3. b    4. b    5. c

### Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T  
2. F / Dan pulled the trigger on his gun and shot bullets in the air to scare people in the town.  
3. T                              4. T  
5. F / Dan was sent on a voyage to the middle of the ocean.  
6. F / Every person who inhabited Ocean-town disliked Dan.

Part B

1. b    2. c    3. d    4. c

## Unit 14

### Exercise 1

1. a    2. c    3. b    4. d    5. a

### Exercise 2

1. luxury                      2. crown                      3. chef  
4. bleed                      5. horrible                    6. impolite  
7. kneel                      8. massive  
9. bond                      10. fibers

### Exercise 3

1. b    2. d    3. a    4. a    5. d  
6. d    7. a    8. c    9. a    10. d

### Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. T  
2. F / The chef was a horrible person that everyone hated.  
3. T                              4. T  
5. F / The chef was very impolite and always scolded his workers.  
6. T

Part B

1. c    2. d    3. b    4. c

## Unit 15

### Exercise 1

1. b, c    2. a, c    3. a, b    4. c, d    5. c, d

### Exercise 2

1. diameter                    2. theft                      3. scheme  
4. bless                      5. famine                    6. exploited  
7. slim                      8. routine  
9. Pardon                    10. pharaohs

### Exercise 3

1. ripe / roasted                      2. Pardon / theft  
3. famine / pharaoh                    4. stove / cereal  
5. harvest / slim                      6. nut / diameter  
7. affair / merry                      8. routine / bless  
9. exploit / assembly                    10. cheerful / scheme

### Reading Comprehension

Part A

1. F / The pharaoh's party was a great affair.  
2. T                              3. T  
4. F / Monkey repeated the routine for four days.  
5. T  
6. F / Monkey asked the pharaoh, "Pardon?"

Part B

1. b    2. b    3. a    4. c

## Unit 16

### Exercise 1

1. b    2. a    3. b    4. b    5. a

### Exercise 2

1. a    2. b    3. a    4. a    5. b

### Exercise 3

1. adolescents    2. sorrow  
3. journalism    4. swell    5. hindered  
6. punishment    7. slices    8. straws  
9. liberty    10. tidy

### Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. T  
2. F / The boy leaning against the pole complimented Matthew's jacket.  
3. T    4. T  
5. F / Matthew wants to work in journalism when he grows up.  
6. T

#### Part B

1. c    2. c    3. b    4. c

## Unit 17

### Exercise 1

1. b    2. d    3. d    4. b    5. a

### Exercise 2

1. miserable    2. agency    3. shallow  
4. confine    5. ash    6. navigate  
7. originated    8. affection  
9. vibrating    10. sympathy

### Exercise 3

1. superstition / originated    2. agency / dismissed  
3. slope / lava    4. fate / vibrated  
5. confine / sympathy    6. ash / erupted  
7. miserable / retrieve    8. affection / wander  
9. remainder / shallow    10. navigate / spanned

### Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. F / The trip to find the magic cup was very difficult.  
2. T    3. T  
4. F / A superstition said that anyone who retrieved the cup would get their greatest wish.  
5. T    6. T

#### Part B

1. d    2. d    3. b    4. a

## Unit 18

### Exercise 1

#### Part A

1. c    2. a    3. d    4. b    5. c

#### Part B

1. a    2. c    3. a    4. d    5. b

### Exercise 2

1. a, d    2. a, b    3. c, d    4. b, c    5. a, c

### Exercise 3

1. yield    2. spear    3. thunder  
4. retreated    5. troops    6. armor  
7. steep    8. independence  
9. invasion    10. boom

## Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. T    2. T  
3. F / The knight wore armor, and the warriors used spears.  
4. T    5. T  
6. F / The flames scared the enemy.

#### Part B

1. a    2. b    3. b    4. c

## Unit 19

### Exercise 1

#### Part A

1. b    2. d    3. a    4. c    5. a

#### Part B

1. b    2. a    3. c    4. a    5. d

### Exercise 2

1. b    2. c    3. b    4. d    5. b

### Exercise 3

1. daisy / mist    2. dispute / confronted  
3. bench / sighed    4. horror / incident  
5. pregnant / spare    6. revenge / plotted  
7. stems / rage    8. supper / tender  
9. orphan / sneak    10. objects / shame

### Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. T    2. T  
3. F / The girl plotted to get revenge against the farmer.  
4. F / The girl sighed because the farmer wouldn't give her a pear.  
5. T  
6. F / The orphan hadn't eaten supper for days.

#### Part B

1. a    2. a    3. c    4. a

## Unit 20

### Exercise 1

1. a    2. b    3. d    4. a    5. c

### Exercise 2

1. magnificent    2. necessity    3. supreme  
4. outcome    5. evident  
6. dissatisfied    7. seize    8. dawn  
9. pile    10. cub

### Exercise 3

1. c    2. b    3. a    4. b    5. d  
6. a    7. a    8. d    9. d    10. a

### Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. T  
2. F / Mother Wolf knew how to seize prey.  
3. T  
4. F / Mother Wolf made a den beneath the tree.  
5. T    6. T

#### Part B

1. b    2. c    3. d    4. d

## Unit 21

### Exercise 1

1. b    2. a    3. d    4. d    5. d

### Exercise 2

- |               |               |            |
|---------------|---------------|------------|
| 1. dim        | 2. accustomed | 3. leak    |
| 4. stiff      | 5. clan       |            |
| 6. astonished | 7. feast      | 8. glowing |
| 9. tragic     | 10. instincts |            |

### Exercise 3

- |                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. fable / astonished  | 2. banged / instincts |
| 3. feast / accustomed  | 4. physician / joint  |
| 5. emphasis / affirm   | 6. hollow / stiff     |
| 7. clan / tunes        | 8. dim / stroked      |
| 9. tragic / sacrifices | 10. leak / glowing    |

### Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. T
2. T
3. F / The old man's joints were stiff from sitting under a tree for a long time.
4. F / The old man's instincts told him there was something in the forest.
5. T
6. T

#### Part B

1. d
2. b
3. c
4. b

## Unit 22

### Exercise 1

#### Part A

1. a
2. b
3. d
4. b
5. b

#### Part B

1. b
2. d
3. a
4. b
5. a

### Exercise 2

- |                            |                      |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. inquired / dose         | 2. peered / pose     |
| 3. portrait / commissioned |                      |
| 4. coincided / accommodate |                      |
| 5. circus / dyed           | 6. extent / headline |
| 7. messenger / stripe      | 8. ranch / informal  |
| 9. gender / steering       | 10. tempted / tame   |

### Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. T
2. F / Ben wasn't tempted by money when he had his own circus.
3. T
4. T
5. F / Ben learned about the circus from a newspaper headline.
6. F / An artist was commissioned to paint informal portraits of people posing in front of a funny picture.

#### Part B

1. c
2. a
3. d
4. d

## Unit 23

### Exercise 1

1. a
2. c
3. d
4. b
5. b
6. c
7. c
8. a
9. b
10. a

### Exercise 2

- |                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Aborigine / cottage | 2. outlaw / prospects |
| 3. wizard / shaved     | 4. cautious / gamble  |
| 5. ban / daytime       | 6. lawn / faded       |
| 7. desperate / purse   | 8. mow / fierce       |
| 9. terrified / confess | 10. seldom / rod      |

## Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. T
2. F / Hans went to the Aborigine's cottage because he liked the prospect of food and warmth.
3. F / The old man in the cottage was a wizard.
4. F / When daylight faded, Hans returned to the cottage.
5. T
6. T

#### Part B

1. a
2. a
3. b
4. d

## Unit 24

### Exercise 1

#### Part A

1. b
2. a
3. d
4. c
5. d

#### Part B

1. b
2. d
3. b
4. a
5. c

### Exercise 2

- |                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. symphony / initiated | 2. graze / cattle       |
| 3. nerve / optimist     | 4. lane / paved         |
| 5. herd / bundle        | 6. widow / greed        |
| 7. parade / posters     | 8. portable / bulb      |
| 9. phantom / fled       | 10. baggage / scratched |

### Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. F / Larry was a cow, Harry was a rooster, and Lester was a duck on the widow Riley's farm.
2. T
3. T
4. F / The animals initiated the journey with a portable microphone, a flute, and a drum.
5. F / Lester was an optimist.
6. F / Harry knocked over the lamp to break the bulb.

#### Part B

1. b
2. c
3. b
4. a

## Unit 25

### Exercise 1

#### Part A

1. a
2. a
3. d
4. c
5. b

#### Part B

1. c
2. b
3. b
4. a
5. d

### Exercise 2

1. a, d
2. b, c
3. a, d
4. a, b
5. b, d

### Exercise 3

- |             |                |               |
|-------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. fraction | 2. dynasty     | 3. rays       |
| 4. illusion | 5. via         | 6. circulated |
| 7. resigned | 8. frost       |               |
| 9. trembled | 10. lieutenant |               |

### Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. F / The sun's rays don't shine on Greenland for three months.
2. F / He wanted to start a dynasty in his name in Greenland.
3. F / Erik the Red's consequent punishment for killing his neighbor was to leave Iceland.
4. T
5. T
6. F / Erik gave it the name Greenland because he wanted many people to settle there.

#### Part B

1. c
2. b
3. b
4. b



## Unit 26

### Exercise 1

1. a, d    2. b, c    3. a, d    4. a, c    5. b, c

### Exercise 2

1. disgusting                      2. collapsed                      3. wiped  
4. curved                              5. embraced                      6. autumn  
7. wire                                  8. altered  
9. drain                                  10. receipt

### Exercise 3

1. altered / collapsed                      2. ginger / blend  
3. autumn / envied                          4. aside / wires  
5. crushed / receipt                          6. fireworks / fuse  
7. paste / wiped                              8. curved / embraced  
9. jealous / disgusting                      10. flour / drain

### Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. F / The brothers blended flour and ginger together when trying to make cookies.  
2. T  
3. F / The model rocket worked after the wires were moved.  
4. F / The mailbox collapsed because the rocket curved into it.  
5. T    6. T

#### Part B

1. a    2. b    3. d    4. d

## Unit 27

### Exercise 1

#### Part A

1. a    2. a    3. b    4. b    5. a

#### Part B

1. a    2. a    3. d    4. a    5. c

### Exercise 2

1. Meanwhile                      2. ambassador                      3. necklace  
4. acknowledge                      5. insult  
6. conquered                          7. precious                          8. stack  
9. rumors                                  10. prejudice

### Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. T  
2. F / The Spanish had blonde hair.  
3. T    4. T  
5. F / Atahualpa thought that Pizarro had insulted his heritage and that his men held prejudices against the Incas.  
6. F / Pizarro did not agree that Atahualpa was both a god and a king.

#### Part B

1. a    2. a    3. b    4. b

## Unit 28

### Exercise 1

#### Part A

1. a    2. b    3. c    4. b    5. d

#### Part B

1. c    2. b    3. b    4. d    5. c

### Exercise 2

1. postponed                      2. congress                      3. merchant  
4. institution                      5. chemist                      6. dairy

7. splash                                  8. suburbs  
9. tide                                      10. aches

### Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. T  
2. F / The chill of the arctic water made Marcus's finger ache.  
3. F / Marcus didn't work in an institution with his father.  
4. F / In the end, everyone was very happy with Marcus.  
5. T    6. T

#### Part B

1. b    2. a    3. d    4. c

## Unit 29

### Exercise 1

#### Part A

1. a    2. c    3. b    4. c    5. b

#### Part B

1. d    2. a    3. b    4. c    5. c

### Exercise 2

1. traced / bomb  
2. circumstances / nuclear  
3. glance / certificate                      4. grief / coffin  
5. devastated / cope                          6. rotated / souvenir  
7. criticism / frowned                          8. gazed / microscope  
9. license / submarine                          10. portrayed / groom

### Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. F / The photographs portrayed important events from the grandfather's life.  
2. T    3. T    4. T  
5. F / The certificate was from the day the grandfather got married.  
6. T  
Part B  
1. c    2. a    3. c    4. c

## Unit 30

### Exercise 1

#### Part A

1. c    2. b    3. b    4. a    5. d

#### Part B

1. d    2. a    3. d    4. d    5. a

### Exercise 2

1. spine    2. basin    3. cupboard  
4. hopped    5. emerged    6. hook  
7. caterpillar    8. strip  
9. sleeves    10. stain

### Reading Comprehension

#### Part A

1. T  
2. F / The caterpillar had no bones, not even a spine.  
3. T  
4. F / Cory hopped off the counter and ran into the kitchen.  
5. T    6. T

#### Part B

1. a    2. c    3. c    4. a